

GUIDELINES FOR DESCRIBING ASSOCIATIONS AND ALLIANCES OF THE U.S. NATIONAL VEGETATION CLASSIFICATION

Michael Jennings^{1*}, Don Faber-Langendoen², Robert Peet³, Orié Loucks⁴, David Glenn-Lewin⁵,
Antoni Damman⁶, Michael Barbour⁷, Robert Pfister⁸, Dennis Grossman², David Roberts⁹,
David Tart¹⁰, Marilyn Walker¹⁰, Stephen Talbot¹¹, Joan Walker¹⁰, Gary Hartshorn¹²,
Gary Waggoner¹, Marc Abrams¹³, Alison Hill¹⁰, Marcel Rejmanek⁷

The Ecological Society of America Vegetation Classification Panel

**Version 4.0
July, 2004**

1. U.S. Geological Survey, 2. NatureServe, 3. University of North Carolina, 4. Miami University, 5. Unity College,
6. Kansas State University, 7. University of California-Davis, 8. University of Montana, 9. Montana State
University,
10. USDA Forest Service, 11. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 12. World Forestry Center, 13. Pennsylvania State
University,

* Manuscript contact: email jennings@uidaho.edu; phone 208-885-3901

1 **ABSTRACT**

2 The purpose of this document is to provide guidelines for describing and classifying plant
3 associations and alliances as formally recognized units of vegetation within the U.S. National
4 Vegetation Classification (NVC), a regional component of the International Vegetation
5 Classification (NatureServe 2003). The guidelines are intended to be used by anyone proposing
6 additions, deletions, or other changes to the named units of the NVC. By setting forth guidelines
7 for field records, analysis, description, peer review, archiving, and dissemination, the Ecological
8 Society of America’s Vegetation Classification Panel, in collaboration with the U.S. Federal
9 Geographic Data Committee, NatureServe, the U.S. Geological Survey, and others, seeks to
10 advance our common understanding of vegetation and improve our capability to sustain this
11 resource.

12 We begin by articulating the rationale for developing these guidelines and then briefly
13 review the history and development of vegetation classification in the United States. The
14 guidelines for floristic units of vegetation include definitions of the association and alliance
15 concepts. This is followed by a description of the requirements for field plot records and the
16 identification and classification of vegetation types. Guidelines for peer review of proposed
17 additions and revisions of types are provided, as is a structure for data access and management.

18 Since new knowledge and insight will inevitably lead to the need for improvements to the
19 guidelines described here, this document has been written with the expectation that it will be
20 revised with new versions produced as needed. Recommendations for revisions should be
21 addressed to the Panel Chair, Vegetation Classification Panel, Ecological Society of America,
22 Suite 400, 735 H St, NW, Washington, DC. Email contact information can be found at
23 <http://www.esa.org/vegweb> or contact the Ecological Society of America’s Science Program
24 Office, 1707 H St, NW, Suite 400, Washington, DC 20006, Telephone: (202) 833-8773. The
25 authors of this document work as volunteers in the service of the Ecological Society of America
26 and the professional opinions expressed by them in this document are not necessarily those of
27 the institutions that employ them.

28	TABLE OF CONTENTS	
29	ABSTRACT.....	1
30	INTRODUCTION	3
31	1. RATIONALE.....	3
32	2. BACKGROUND AND PRINCIPLES	5
33	2.1 DISCLAIMERS.....	7
34	3. A BRIEF HISTORICAL BACKGROUND	8
35	3.1. DESCRIBING AND CLASSIFYING VEGETATION	9
36	3.2. A NATIONAL VEGETATION CLASSIFICATION FOR THE UNITED STATES ..	18
37	ESTABLISHING AND REVISING FLORISTIC UNITS OF VEGETATION	21
38	4. THE ASSOCIATION AND ALLIANCE CONCEPTS	22
39	4.1. ASSOCIATION.....	22
40	4.2 ALLIANCE.....	25
41	5. VEGETATION FIELD PLOTS	27
42	5.1. MAJOR TYPES OF REQUIRED DATA	27
43	5.2. STAND SELECTION AND PLOT DESIGN	28
44	5.3 PLOT DATA	34
45	6. CLASSIFICATION AND DESCRIPTION OF FLORISTIC UNITS	46
46	6.1. FROM PLANNING TO DATA INTERPRETATION	46
47	6.2. DOCUMENTATION AND DESCRIPTION OF TYPES.....	51
48	6.3. NOMENCLATURE OF ASSOCIATIONS AND ALLIANCES.....	54
49	7. PEER REVIEW	58
50	7.1 CLASSIFICATION CONFIDENCE.....	59
51	7.2. PEER-REVIEW PROCESS.....	61
52	8. DATA ACCESS AND MANAGEMENT	64
53	8.1 BOTANICAL NOMENCLATURE	64
54	8.2 PLOT DATA ARCHIVES AND DATA EXCHANGE.....	66
55	8.3 COMMUNITY-TYPE DATABASES.....	67
56	8.4 PROPOSAL SUBMISSION AND THE NVC PROCEEDINGS.....	68
57	9. DEFINITIONS AND GUIDELINES FOR FIELD APPLICATIONS	68
58	9.1 DEFINITIONS AND CRITERIA FOR FLORISTIC UNITS.....	69
59	9.2 COLLECTING FIELD PLOTS.....	70
60	9.3. CLASSIFYING AND DESCRIBING ASSOCIATIONS AND ALLIANCES	75
61	9.4 PEER REVIEW OF PROPOSED VEGETATION TYPES	79
62	9.5. MANAGEMENT OF VEGETATION DATA	82
63	LOOKING AHEAD	84
64	10. INTERNATIONAL COLLABORATION, PROSPECTS AND DIRECTIONS.....	84
65	10.1 INTERNATIONAL COLLABORATION	84
66	10.2 BUILDING THE CLASSIFICATION CONSORTIUM FOR THE FUTURE.....	85
67	10.3 PROSPECTS FOR SCIENTIFIC ADVANCEMENT	86

68 ACKNOWLEDGMENTS 88
69 LITERATURE CITED 89
70 GLOSSARY 101
71 APPENDIX 1 107
72 APPENDIX 2 124
73 APPENDIX 3 137
74 APPENDIX 4 147
75 TABLES 148
76 FIGURES 157
77 TEXT BOXES 162

78

79 INTRODUCTION

80 1. RATIONALE

81 A standardized, widely accepted vegetation classification for the United States is required
82 for effective inventory, assessment, and management of the nation's ecosystems. These needs
83 are increasingly apparent as individuals, private organizations, and governments grapple with the
84 escalating alteration and loss of natural vegetation (for examples, see Klopatek et al. 1979, Mack
85 1986, LaRoe et al. 1995, Mac 1999). Remnants of natural vegetation have become increasingly
86 rare (Noss et al. 1995, Noss and Peters 1995, Barbour and Billings 2000). Some types are now
87 imperiled because of habitat loss or degradation, and others have disappeared entirely from the
88 landscape without ever having been formally documented (Grossman et al. 1994). Losses of
89 vegetation types represent losses in habitat diversity, leading directly to more species¹ being in
90 danger of extinction (Ehrlich 1997, Wilcove et al. 1998, Naeem et al. 1999). Predicted changes
91 in climate, continued atmospheric pollution, ongoing invasions by exotic organisms, and land
92 use changes are likely to cause further unprecedented and rapid alteration in vegetation
93 (Overpeck et al. 1991, Vitousek et al. 1997, Morse et al. 1995), possibly altering existing land

1. Species: technically we typically mean both species and subspecies, and occasionally genera. The term “taxa” is the technical term for these and all other taxonomic entities. However, our focus is at the species and subspecies level and we use species as a common shorthand term for the object of our focus.

94 uses and local economies over large areas. Widespread changes in land use have led to
95 increased social and economic conflicts, resulting in an increasing demand for more robust and
96 timely information about remaining natural and seminatural environments. In addition to these
97 environmental issues, a standardized classification is needed to place basic ecological and
98 biodiversity studies in context. In its application to mapping vegetation, a standardized
99 classification can form the basis for consistently defined and comparable units among different
100 maps. We expect that this standardized classification will play a prominent role in guiding
101 research, resource conservation, and ecosystem management, as well as in planning, restoration
102 activities, and in predicting ecosystem responses to environmental change.

103 To meet the need for a credible, broadly-accepted vegetation classification, the
104 Ecological Society of America (ESA: the professional organization for ecologists in the United
105 States) joined with cooperating organizations such as the U.S. Geological Survey, U.S. Federal
106 Geographic Data Committee, and NatureServe² to form a Panel on Vegetation Classification. To
107 formalize this partnership, the four participating organizations signed a formal Memorandum of
108 Understanding (MOU)³ in August 1998. This MOU defines the working relationship among the
109 signers for the purpose of advancing the National Vegetation Classification.

110 The objectives of the ESA Vegetation Classification Panel are to: (1) facilitate and
111 support the development, implementation, and use of a standardized vegetation classification for
112 the United States; (2) guide professional ecologists in defining and adopting standards for
113 vegetation sampling and analysis in support of the classification; (3) maintain scientific
114 credibility of the classification through peer review; and (4) promote and facilitate international
115 collaboration in development of vegetation classifications and associated standards. In this
116 document the Panel articulates and explains a set of standards and procedures aimed at achieving
117 the first three of these objectives.

2. In July of 2000 The Nature Conservancy's science staff that helped to develop the U.S. National Vegetation Classification transferred to a new organization, NatureServe, which now represents the interests of the Conservancy in the ongoing development of the NVC.

3. Forming a partnership to further develop and implement the national vegetation classification standards. Memorandum of Understanding among ESA, TNC (NatureServe), USGS, and FGDC. 1999. Ecological Society of America, Washington, D.C., USA. 6p. (<http://www.esa.org/vegweb/#MOU>).

118 **2. BACKGROUND AND PRINCIPLES**

119 The ESA Panel on Vegetation Classification recognizes the Federal Geographic Data
120 Committee's (FGDC) "National Vegetation Classification Standard" (1997) as the starting point
121 for developing a national vegetation classification. The FGDC classification standard is a
122 physiognomic-floristic hierarchy with higher-level physiognomic units and lower-level floristic
123 units (Figure 1). The FGDC standard, based on the International Classification of Ecological
124 Communities or ICEC (Grossman et al. 1998; now referred to as the International Vegetation
125 Classification, or IVC), introduced the classification hierarchy, documented the component
126 elements of all except the floristic levels, and provided the context for defining those floristic
127 levels. Between 1995 and 1996 the Panel concentrated on assisting the FGDC by reviewing
128 proposed standards for the physiognomic categories (class, subclass, group, subgroup, and
129 formation; Loucks 1996), as well as the specific physiognomic types within these categories.

130 The guiding principles established by the FGDC for the overall development of the NVC
131 are shown in Box 1 (FGDC 1997, Section 5.3). In particular, the 1997 FGDC standard provided
132 definitions for the floristic units of the classification: the alliance and association. These
133 definitions begin with the premise that a vegetation type represents a group of stands that have
134 similar plant composition and physiognomy, and that types must have diagnostic criteria to
135 enable their recognition. Nonetheless, we recognize that, due to complex biophysical factors as
136 well as chance, vegetation is a continuously varying phenomenon and that species are, to some
137 extent, stochastic in their distribution. As a consequence, floristic vegetation units are not readily
138 defined by precise and absolute criteria. Instead, some examples of vegetation can be seen to be
139 unambiguously members of a particular type, whereas others are intermediate such that their
140 assignment must be defined in terms of relative affinities with alternative types.

141 Although the 1997 FGDC standard includes the two floristic categories of the NVC
142 hierarchy, Alliance and Association, it provides no list of recognized types, no details about
143 nomenclature, nor methods for defining and describing alliances and associations. With respect
144 to these categories, the document states "The current list of Alliances and Associations for the
145 conterminous United States will be published by The Nature Conservancy in the spring of
146 1997." (FGDC 1997 Section 6.0). The list was published in 1998, in cooperation with the
147 Natural Heritage Network (Anderson et al. 1998) and has subsequently been repeatedly refined

148 and improved. Each alliance and association on the list is described in a standardized format
149 (see Grossman et al. 1998, page 48) that contains a compilation of literature and field
150 observations. Collectively, these descriptions constitute a comprehensive summary of our
151 knowledge of the plant communities of the United States. The Panel anticipates that the
152 recognized list of type descriptions will be enhanced and revised in accordance with the FGDC
153 requirement that the alliance and association types must be based on field data conforming to
154 standard methods (FGDC 1997, Sections 5.3 and 7.1) and that the types will be defined so as to
155 meet standard criteria for acceptance. However, the precise standards and criteria were not
156 spelled out by the FGDC. The standards presented here are intended to meet that need.

157 We have used the FGDC “Guiding Principles” and the definitions for association and
158 alliance to guide the development of standards for defining, naming, and describing floristic
159 units. Our goal for future revisions of the list of alliances and associations and supporting
160 documentation is that they will be based on standardized field observation, type description,
161 peer-review, and data management. Each of these activities is summarized next.

162 Field plot records. Vegetation associations and alliances should be identified and
163 described through numerical analysis of plot data that have been collected from across the range
164 of the vegetation type and closely related types (irrespective of political and jurisdictional
165 borders). *We outline standards for plot data in Section 5.*

166 Type description. Proposals for new or revised floristic units must adhere to standards
167 for circumscribing and describing types. Each type description should include sufficient
168 information to determine the distinctive vegetation features of the type and its relation to other
169 types recognized in the classification. Proposals for revision of recognized types must include
170 comparison of the focal types with related types of that level to ensure that they do not duplicate
171 or significantly overlap, but rather enhance, replace, or add to them. *We outline standards for*
172 *type circumscription and description in Section 6.*

173 Peer review. Proposals for new and revised types need to be evaluated through a
174 credible, open peer-review process. *Standards for the peer-review process are outlined in*
175 *Section 7.*

176 Data management. Plot data used to define and describe an association or alliance must
177 be permanently archived in a publicly accessible data archive, either for revisions to the
178 descriptions of existing type concepts, new descriptions of proposed types, or other uses. A

179 digital schema for sharing and integrating plot data from multisource heterogeneous data sets is
180 vitally important to the development of a national vegetation classification. Such a schema must
181 prescribe data content standards for plot data. Accepted proposals for addition or modification
182 of vegetation types and all supporting documentation must be deposited in the NVC digital
183 public archive. All plant taxa referenced in plot data or community type descriptions must be
184 unambiguously defined by reference to a public database or publication of recognized taxa, or by
185 reference to an authoritative, published circumscription. Unknown taxa should be placed as
186 precisely as possible within the phylogenetic hierarchy of such a database or publication. All
187 three types of data archives (for plant taxa, field plots, and associations and alliances) must be
188 truly archival in the sense that the data will be able to be extracted in their original form and
189 context at some indefinite future time by any reasonably diligent investigator. *Data management*
190 *standards are outlined in Section 8.*

191 Summary of guidelines. Implementing the guidelines specified in Sections 4 through 8
192 will require unprecedented technical and organizational cooperation and collaboration among the
193 nonprofit, academic, and governmental institutions that are concerned with the application of
194 science to land use planning and management. *To facilitate their formal adoption and future*
195 *improvement, these guidelines are summarized in list format in Section 9.*

196 2.1 DISCLAIMERS

197 The NVC is a classification of the full range of existing vegetation, from natural types
198 that include old-growth forest stands and seminatural vegetation (including grazed rangelands,
199 old agricultural lands undergoing natural succession, and stands dominated by naturalized
200 exotics) to planted or cultivated vegetation, such as row crops, orchards, and forest plantations.
201 Various uses and applications may require distinctions with respect to naturalness (see Grossman
202 et al. 1998 Appendix E). Descriptions of types should aid users of the classification in
203 differentiating among natural, seminatural, and planted types.

204 Consistent with the FGDC principles, the guidelines described here for floristic units
205 relate to vegetation classification and are not intended as standards for mapping units.
206 Nevertheless, types defined using these guidelines can be mapped and they can be used as the
207 basis for mapping various other types of units as well, subject to limitations of scale and
208 mapping technology. The criteria used to aggregate or differentiate within these vegetation types

209 and to form mapping units will depend upon the purpose of the particular mapping project and
210 the resources devoted to it (e.g., Damman 1979, Pearlstine et al. 1998). For example, in using the
211 NVC Alliance class as a target for vegetation mapping by the Gap Analysis Program, not all
212 alliance types can be resolved. In such cases alliance types are aggregated into map units of
213 “compositional groups” or “ecological complexes” (see Pearlstine et al. 1998). Although not
214 part of the NVC standard, such aggregates represent units of vegetation that meet the needs of
215 the mapping activity and have an explicit relationship to established NVC units.

216 Although vegetation varies more-or-less continuously in time and space, classification
217 partitions that continuum into discrete units for *practical* reasons. These include, for example,
218 facilitating communication and information-gathering about ecological resources, documenting
219 the diversity of ecological communities, and providing a framework for addressing scientific
220 inquiries into the patterns of vegetation. Alternative classification approaches, particularly those
221 that aggregate alliances and associations differently from the NVC and IVC (which use
222 vegetation physiognomy as the major criteria for aggregating alliances) are available and may be
223 more practical for some particular uses. For example, hierarchical levels of vegetation
224 classifications have been defined based purely on floristic criteria (Westhoff and van der Maarel
225 1973), on ecosystem processes (Bailey 1996), or on potential natural vegetation (Daubenmire
226 1968). Each of these approaches meets different needs and the NVC associations that are
227 defined using these guidelines can nest to varying degrees under any of these hierarchy types. In
228 providing guidelines for implementation of the floristic levels of the U.S. National Vegetation
229 Classification, we in no way mean to imply that this is the only valid classification approach.

230 **3. A BRIEF HISTORICAL BACKGROUND**

231 *Vegetation classification attempts to identify discrete, repeatable classes*
232 *of relatively homogeneous vegetation communities or associations about*
233 *which reliable statements can be made. Classification assumes either that*
234 *natural vegetation groupings (communities) do occur, or that it is*
235 *reasonable to separate a continuum of variation in vegetation composition*
236 *and/or structure into a series of arbitrary classes.” (Kimmins 1997).*

237 As we reflected on the history of vegetation classification in the United States and
238 elsewhere and on the opportunities that now lie before us, we became convinced that a clear set

239 of standards for defining floristic units would advance the discipline of vegetation science and
240 make a strong contribution to conservation and resource management. Because our goal is to
241 develop standards informed by the rich historical debate surrounding vegetation classification,
242 we begin this document where the ESA Vegetation Panel began its work: by reviewing the
243 historical basis for some of the fundamental concepts that shape the floristic levels of the US
244 National Vegetation Classification.

245 3.1. DESCRIBING AND CLASSIFYING VEGETATION

246 For over a century vegetation scientists have studied plant communities to identify their
247 compositional variation, distribution, dynamics, and environmental relationships. They have
248 used a multiplicity of methods including intuition, knowledge of physiological and population
249 ecology (autecology), synthetic tables, and mathematical analyses to organize and interpret these
250 patterns and relationships. Perhaps Shimwell (1971) expressed the situation best when, after
251 reviewing the large and diverse literature on vegetation classification, he prefaced his book on
252 the subject with the Latin maxim *quot homines tot sententiae*, "so many men, so many opinions."
253 What follows is not a comprehensive review of vegetation classification; that has been done
254 elsewhere (e.g., Whittaker 1962, 1973, Shimwell 1971, Mueller-Dombois and Ellenberg 1974).
255 Instead, we focus on those elements most significant to the National Vegetation Classification
256 enterprise and particularly those most relevant to the floristic levels.

257 Vegetation classification is a powerful tool employed for several purposes, including: (1)
258 efficient communication, (2) data reduction and synthesis, (3) interpretation, and (4) land
259 management and planning. Classifications provide one way of summarizing our knowledge of
260 vegetation patterns.

261 Although different individuals conceptualize vegetation patterns differently, all
262 classifications require the identification of a set of discrete vegetation classes. Several additional
263 ideas are central to the conceptual basis for classification (following Mueller-Dombois and
264 Ellenberg 1974, p. 153):

- 265 1. Given similar habitat conditions, similar combinations of species and subspecies recur
266 from stand to stand, though similarity declines with geographic distance.
- 267 2. No two stands (or sampling units) are exactly alike, owing to chance events of dispersal,
268 disturbance, extinction, and history.

269 3. Taxon assemblages change more or less continuously with geographic or environmental
270 distance.

271 4. Stand composition varies with the spatial and temporal scale of analysis.

272 These fundamental concepts are widely shared, and articulating them helps us understand
273 the inherent limitations of any classification scheme. With these fundamentals in mind, we can
274 better review the primary ways in which vegetation scientists and resource managers have
275 characterized vegetation pattern to meet their needs.

276 *Physiognomic characterization*

277 Physiognomy, narrowly defined, refers to the general external appearance of vegetation
278 based on growth form (gross morphology) of the dominant plants. Structure relates to the
279 spacing and height of plants forming the matrix of the vegetation cover (Fosberg 1961). Often
280 physiognomy is used to encompass both definitions, particularly when distinguishing
281 “physiognomic” classifications from “floristic” ones. The basic unit of many physiognomic
282 classifications is the formation, a "community type defined by dominance of a given *growth form*
283 in the uppermost stratum of the community, or by a combination of dominant growth forms"
284 (Whittaker 1962). This is the approach used in the physiognomic portion of the NVC.

285 Physiognomic patterns often apply across broad scales as they typically correlate with or
286 are driven by climatic factors, whereas floristic similarities are more regionally constrained as
287 they reflect species composition, which in turn is strongly influenced by geographic
288 discontinuities and idiosyncratic historical factors. Consequently, physiognomic classifications
289 have more often been used in continental or global mapping applications, and floristic
290 classifications in regional applications. A variety of classifications based on physiognomy (e.g.,
291 Fosberg 1961) preceded the development of the widely recognized international classification
292 published by the United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization (UNESCO
293 1973, Mueller-Dombois and Ellenberg 1974). The UNESCO classification was intended to
294 provide a framework for preparing vegetation maps at a scale of about 1:1 million or coarser,
295 appropriate for worldwide comparison of ecological habitats as indicated by equivalent
296 categories of plant growth forms.

297 Physiognomic classifications have, however, been used for natural resource inventory,
298 management, and planning. Such classifications are based on measurements of vegetation
299 attributes that may change during stand development and disturbance and which have

300 management implications for wildlife habitat, watershed integrity, and range utilization. Criteria
301 for physiognomic classification commonly include (a) plant growth forms that dominate the
302 vegetation (e.g., forb, grass, shrub, tree), (b) plant density or cover, (c) size of the dominant
303 plants, and (d) vertical layering (e.g., single stratum, multistrata). Physiognomic types have been
304 used in numerous regional wildlife habitat studies (e.g., Thomas 1979, Barbour et al. 1998,
305 Barbour et al. 2000), and they have also been used in conjunction with stand age and structure to
306 assess old-growth status (Tyrrell et al. 1998).

307 Physiognomic classifications alone typically provide a generalization of floristic patterns.
308 However, because they lack specificity at local or regional extents they are often used in
309 conjunction with, or integrated into, thematically higher-resolution classifications that rely on
310 floristics, that is, the taxonomic identity of plants. An exception to this is in certain kinds of
311 floristically rich and complex or poorly understood vegetation, such as tropical rain forests,
312 where physiognomic classification of vegetation remains the most common approach (Adam
313 1994, Pignatti et al. 1994).

314 *Floristic characterization*

315 Floristic characterization uses the composition of taxa to describe stands of vegetation.
316 These characterizations are usually based on records of formal field observations (“plots”),
317 which are fundamental to the definition, identification, and description of vegetation types.
318 Methods range from describing only the dominant species to listing and recording the abundance
319 of all species present in the stand (total floristic composition). Differences in these
320 characterization methods have an important bearing on the definition and description of the
321 alliances and associations, and are discussed next.

322 Dominance

323 One traditional way to classify vegetation is on the basis of dominant plant species of the
324 uppermost stratum. “Dominance types” are typically based on the dominant taxonomic entity
325 (or group of dominants) as assessed by some measure of importance such as biomass, density,
326 height, or canopy cover (Kimmins 1997). Such classes represent the lower levels in several
327 published classification hierarchies (e.g., Cowardin et al. 1979, Brown et al. 1980).

328 Determining dominance is relatively easy and requiring only a modest floristic
329 knowledge. However, because dominant species often have geographically and ecologically

330 broad ranges, there can be substantial floristic and ecologic variation within any one dominance
331 type. The dominance approach has been used widely in aerial photo interpretation and mapping
332 inventories because of its ease of interpretation and application. With the advances in remotely-
333 sensed image acquisition and interpretation (spaceborne as well as airborne), there has been a
334 significant increase in the level of effort in classifying and mapping dominant vegetation types
335 across large areas (e.g., Scott and Jennings 1998, Lins and Kleckner 1996).

336 The term “cover type” is almost synonymous with “dominance type.” Cover types are
337 typically based on the dominant species in the uppermost stratum of existing vegetation.
338 Forestland cover types may be variously assessed by a plurality of tree basal area or canopy
339 cover (Eyre 1980). Similarly, rangeland cover types are typically based on those species that
340 constitute a plurality of canopy cover (Shiftlet 1994). Although their limitations have been
341 clearly articulated (e.g., Whittaker 1973), dominance types remain broadly used because they
342 provide a simple, efficient approach for inventory, mapping, and modeling purposes.

343 Total floristic composition

344 Total community floristic composition has been widely used for systematic community
345 classification. Two of the major approaches used in the United States are those of Braun-
346 Blanquet (1928; also referred to as the “Zürich-Montpellier School”, see Westhoff and van der
347 Maarel 1973, Kent and Coker 1992), and Daubenmire (1952, 1968); see Layser (1974) and
348 Kimmins (1997) for a comparison of the two approaches). Both approaches use an “association”
349 concept derived from the definition of Flahault and Schröter (1910), which states that an
350 association is “a plant community type of definite floristic composition, uniform habitat
351 conditions, and uniform physiognomy” (Flahault and Schröter 1910; see Daubenmire 1968 and
352 Moravec 1993).

353 Braun-Blanquet (1928) defined the association as “a plant community characterized by
354 definite floristic and sociological (organizational) features” which shows, by the presence of
355 diagnostic species “a certain independence.” Diagnostic species are those whose relative
356 constancy or abundance distinguish one association from another (Whittaker 1962).
357 Identification of character species, those species that are particularly restricted to a single type,
358 was considered essential to the definition of an association, whereas differential species (those
359 species that delimit one association from another association only; not to be confused with the

360 character species which distinguish one particular association from all other associations),
361 defined lower taxa, such as subassociations (Moravec 1993). Patterns of diagnostic species are
362 assessed using relevés (i.e., plots). A relevé is a record of vegetation composition that includes a
363 comprehensive list of plants in a relatively small, environmentally uniform habitat (Mueller-
364 Dombois and Ellenberg 1974), together with assessment of species cover. The Braun-Blanquet
365 approach combines plant associations with common diagnostic species in a hierarchical
366 classification with progressively broader floristic units called alliances, orders, and classes (see
367 Pignatti et al. 1994). The association concept has been progressively narrowed as more
368 associations have been defined, each with fewer diagnostic or character species (Mueller-
369 Dombois and Ellenberg 1974). Today many associations are defined using only differential
370 species (Weber et al. 2000). Classifications based on the Braun-Blanquet approach continue to
371 be widely employed outside North America (especially in Europe, South Africa and Japan; see
372 Mucina et al. 1993, Mucina 1997, 2001, Rodwell et al. 2002, but also see Borhidi [1996] as a
373 milestone vegetation treatment from the Western hemisphere), and are now more often applied
374 in the U.S. (e.g., Komárková 1979, Cooper 1986, Barbour et al. 1993, Peinado et al. 1994,
375 Nakamura and Grandtner 1994, Nakamura et al. 1994, Walker et al. 1994, Peinado et al. 1998,
376 Rivas-Martinez et al. 1999, Spribille 2002, Stachurska-Swakon and Spribille 2002).

377 Daubenmire (1952) purposely looked for and sampled the least disturbed and oldest plant
378 communities ("near-climax") that he could find across a full range of environments as a basis to
379 define "climax associations". This was based upon the premise that a classification "based upon
380 climax types of vegetation best expresses the potential biotic productivity of a given combination
381 of environmental factors" (Daubenmire (1953). Stands were grouped by traditional
382 synecological synthesis tables for study of community floristics and evaluation of diagnostic
383 species. Daubenmire (1968) narrowed the definition of association to represent a type of climax
384 phytocoenosis and suggested the word "associes" could be used to indicate plant communities in
385 earlier recognizable stages of succession. Later, many authors preferred to use a different
386 term—"community type"—for seral and disclimax plant communities to avoid confusion
387 between climax and seral types. In contrast to earlier definitions of "climax", Daubenmire and
388 Daubenmire (1968) noted that their use of the term was relative to the longevity of seral, shade-
389 intolerant tree species and that the "climax" condition was generally achievable in 300 to 500
390 years.

391 Although the Daubenmire and Braun-Blanquet methods have strong underlying
392 similarities (see Layser 1974) the original approach of Daubenmire (1952) was to define climax
393 associations as floristically stable reference points for interpreting vegetation dynamics and site
394 attributes. Conversely, the Braun-Blanquet association was intended as a *systematic* unit of
395 classification, irrespective of successional status. Thus, under the Braun-Blanquet approach, old
396 fields, pastures, and forests were all described using the association concept, with no
397 preconceptions as to how such types relate to a climax association or successional sequence.
398 Another fundamental difference between the Braun-Blanquet and Daubenmire approaches is
399 apparent in forest vegetation, where the latter assigns primary weighting to diagnostic members
400 of the predominant growth form (tree species), particularly those expected to dominate in late-
401 successional states, and only secondary weighting to diagnostic members of the undergrowth
402 vegetation. Another difference is that the Daubenmire approach makes an explicit effort to use
403 the late-successional natural vegetation to predict the climax vegetation. Because the two
404 methodologies rely on similar vegetation data and analysis, the units defined for late-
405 successional vegetation under these two methods may appear similar. However, if one considers
406 trees and undergrowth vegetation equally in terms of total floristic composition, different types
407 of associations could be defined for the same area, as illustrated recently by Spribille (2001).

408 Daubenmire's "habitat types" represent parts of the land surface capable of supporting
409 the same kind of climax plant association (Daubenmire 1952, 1968). During the 1960s and 70s,
410 with an emerging emphasis on natural resource management, Daubenmire's approach of using
411 climax associations as a conceptual framework for a site classification gained preeminence in the
412 western United States. Financial support was provided, particularly by the US Forest Service,
413 for developing plant association and habitat type taxonomies on a systematic basis over large
414 areas of the American West. With millions of hectares to cover, methods were optimized for
415 efficiency (Franklin et al. 1971). In addition, sampling was no longer restricted to "climax" or
416 "near-climax" stands; rather, vegetation was sampled with relevés from "late-successional"
417 (maturing) stands across the full range of environmental conditions (Pfister and Arno 1980).
418 The term "series" was introduced by Daubenmire and Daubenmire (1968) for grouping forest
419 associations having a common climax overstory dominant species. Associations, nested within
420 series, were defined by diagnostic species (identified from a synthesis of field samples) in the
421 forest understory. By the 1980s, more than 100 monographs had been published on habitat types

422 of forestlands and rangelands in the western United States (Wellner 1989), and accompanying
423 keys were provided to identify the habitat types and to infer their potential climax association
424 (also called potential natural vegetation type). However, it should be noted that all these efforts
425 first classified late-successional existing vegetation associations as the starting point for inferring
426 potential vegetation and habitat type interpretations.

427 Physiognomic-floristic characterizations

428 Descriptions of vegetation need not rely solely on either floristics *or* physiognomy. A
429 classification that combines physiognomic and floristic criteria allows flexibility for
430 characterizing a given area by both its physiognomy and composition. Driscoll et al. (1984)
431 proposed a multi-agency ecological land classification system for the United States that consists
432 of a combination of the physiognomic units of UNESCO (1973) and the floristic "late-
433 successional" associations or habitat types. Subsequently, The Nature Conservancy developed a
434 combined physiognomic-floristic classification of existing vegetation titled the International
435 Classification of Ecological Communities (see Grossman et al. 1998) using modified
436 physiognomic units of UNESCO for the upper levels and the floristic alliance and association
437 units for the lower levels (see Figure 1). Units at all levels of the classification were developed
438 across the United States, based on a synthesis of existing information and ecological expertise
439 (Anderson et al. 1998). The Conservancy's definition of the association was based on Flahault
440 and Schröter's (1910) association concept of an existing vegetation type with uniform floristic
441 composition, habitat conditions, and physiognomy. Both the Driscoll et al. (1984) and the TNC
442 classifications use a formation concept that incorporates some elements of climate and
443 geography into the physiognomic units, and integrates them with floristic units based on
444 variations of the association concept.

445 More strictly floristic classifications, such as those of the Braun-Blanquet school,
446 occasionally find it convenient to organize vegetation classes by formations (Rodwell et al.
447 2002). Westhoff and van der Maarel (1973) note that since the "floristic-sociological characters
448 of an association are supposed to reflect all other characters, a floristic-sociologically uniform
449 association might be expected to be structurally uniform as well." Though not always true
450 (Westhoff 1967), there is often sufficient structural or physiognomic uniformity to make such
451 integration meaningful. Indeed, it may be possible to conceive of a "phytosociological

452 formation,” in which the definitions of the formation units are informed by the floristic units they
453 contain (Westhoff and van der Maarel 1973, Rodwell et al. 2002).

454 *Floristic classifications and community concepts*

455 Continuum concepts and vegetation classification

456 Curtis (1959) and Whittaker (1956; also see McIntosh 1967) explicitly recognized that
457 vegetation varies continuously along environmental, successional, and geographic gradients. In
458 addition, these workers embraced the observation of Gleason (1926) that species respond
459 individualistically to these gradients and that chance plays an important role in the composition
460 of vegetation (but see Nicolson and McIntosh 2002 for an important recent view of Gleason’s
461 individualistic concept). The necessary consequence is that in many cases there are not clear and
462 unambiguous boundaries between vegetation types, and that vegetation composition is not
463 consistently predictable. Any decision as to how to divide the continuously varying and
464 somewhat unpredictable phenomenon of vegetation into community types is of necessity
465 somewhat arbitrary with multiple acceptable solutions.

466 A common approach to capturing vegetation pattern across landscapes is to describe
467 change in floristic composition relative to gradients in geographic or environmental factors such
468 as climate and soils. The set of techniques used to relate vegetation to known physical gradients
469 is referred to as direct gradient analysis. In contrast, techniques for ordering vegetation along
470 compositional gradients deduced from stand similarity and independently of knowledge of the
471 physical environment are referred to as indirect gradient analysis (Gauch 1982, Kent and Coker
472 1992). Gradients observed using indirect methods can be divided to form a classification, or
473 these gradients can be used to identify key variables driving compositional variation, and these
474 in turn can be used to create an optimal direct gradient representation. Gradient analysis need
475 not lead to classification, yet many researchers have "classified" or summarized vegetation into
476 types based on gradient patterns (e.g., Whittaker 1956, Curtis 1959, Peet 1981, Faber-
477 Langendoen and Maycock 1987, Smith 1995).

478 Many natural resource professionals and conservationists have used gradient analysis to
479 develop local classifications. Practitioners have also used a “natural community” type concept to
480 develop widely differing kinds of regional classifications, defining units by various combinations
481 of criteria, including vegetation physiognomy, current species composition, soil moisture,

482 substrate, soil chemistry, or topographic position, depending on the local situation (e.g., Nelson
483 1985, Reschke 1990, Schafale and Weakley 1990, Minnesota NHP 1993). This approach has
484 been used with great success for conservation and inventory at the local and state level, but the
485 utility declines with increasing spatial scale.

486 Ecological land classifications

487 There are a number of classification systems that include vegetation as one of several
488 criteria for classifying ecological systems (e.g., McNab and Avers 1994, Avers et al. 1994).
489 Vegetation physiognomy is often used at broad scales to help delineate biogeographic or
490 bioclimatic regions (e.g., Loveland et al. 1999), whereas floristic information is often used at
491 finer scales to define ecological types and delineate ecological land units (e.g. Bailey et al. 1994,
492 Cleland et al. 1994). The habitat type approach is a vegetation-based site (land) classification
493 system (Ferguson, Morgan and Johnson 1989). Once the classification of late-successional
494 associations (existing vegetation) is completed, trends toward climax are interpreted and a key to
495 habitat types (areas of similar potential natural vegetation) is developed for field identification
496 and mapping purposes. Ecological land classification approaches typically use potential natural
497 vegetation as one of several key elements to define ecosystem or ecological land units (Lapin
498 and Barnes 1995, Bailey 1996). These classifications have often been used to guide forest
499 management.

500 The site classification approach does not provide direct information on existing, or actual
501 vegetation, and care must be taken not to confuse this distinct goal with the study of existing
502 vegetation. Instead, once the ecological unit is defined, existing vegetation information may be
503 used to characterize the current condition of the unit (Bailey 1996). As Cleland et al. (1997:182)
504 state, "Ecological unit maps may be coupled with inventories of existing vegetation, air quality,
505 aquatic systems, wildlife, and human elements to characterize...ecosystems." Thus, vegetation
506 classifications can play an important role in other classification approaches. Site classifications
507 are also used in the development of vegetation state-and-transition models (Bestelmeyer et al.
508 2003).

509 *Existing vegetation and potential natural vegetation*

510 Ecologists have developed classifications of both existing vegetation and potential
511 natural vegetation. These should always be kept distinct in considerations of vegetation

512 classifications as they support different, but possibly complementary, objectives and
513 applications. By *existing vegetation* we simply mean the vegetation found at a given location at
514 the time of observation. By *potential natural vegetation* we mean “the vegetation that would
515 become established if successional sequences were completed without interference by man or
516 natural disturbance under the present climatic and edaphic conditions” (Tüxen 1956, in Mueller-
517 Dombois and Ellenberg 1974).

518 Classifying existing vegetation requires fewer assumptions about vegetation dynamics
519 than classifying potential natural vegetation. Emphasis is placed on the current conditions of the
520 stand. Classifications that emphasize potential natural vegetation require the classifier to predict
521 the composition of mature stages of vegetation based on knowledge of the existing vegetation,
522 species autecologies and habitat relationships, and disturbance regimes. For this reason,
523 sampling to identify potential vegetation types is often directed at stands thought to represent
524 mature or late seral vegetation. The 1997 FGDC vegetation standard pertains to existing
525 vegetation and does not address issues related to the study of potential natural vegetation. This
526 document has been written in support of the FGDC standard and is intended to support the study
527 of existing vegetation.

528 3.2. A NATIONAL VEGETATION CLASSIFICATION FOR THE UNITED 529 STATES

530 *Agency and scientific consensus on classification*

531 Vegetation classification, especially the concept of a unified, nationwide classification,
532 received little support in the U.S. academic community prior to the 1990s. Most academic
533 ecologists viewed classification as having little to contribute towards a general conceptual
534 synthesis of broad applicability and were little interested in products of largely local or regional
535 applicability. This view also stemmed in part from the diversity of approaches to interpreting
536 and understanding the nature of vegetation patterns, as reviewed in the previous section

537 (Nicolson and McIntosh 2002). As a consequence, little attention was paid to creating a unified
538 national vegetation classification.⁴

539 Individual federal and state agencies in the U.S. charged with resource inventory or land
540 management often required vegetation inventories or maps of public lands, both of which depend
541 on classification for definition of units. Prior to the 1990s most of these projects were generally
542 limited in scope and geography and tended to use divergent methods and categories (see Ellis et
543 al. 1977) such that their various products did not fit together as components of a larger scheme.
544 Instead, the disparate, disconnected activities resulted in development of incompatible sets of
545 information and duplication of effort (National Science and Technology Council 1997).
546 Nevertheless, the importance of broadly applicable systems for coordination of efforts had
547 already become apparent during the 1970s and 80s, and some useful and geographically broad
548 classifications were produced, including the habitat type classification of western forests by the
549 U.S. Forest Service (Wellner 1989) and the Cowardin classification of U.S. wetlands (Cowardin
550 et al. 1979). The Society of American Foresters has historically used a practical dominance-
551 based approach for classifying forest types in North America (Eyre 1980), as has the Society for
552 Range Management (Shiftlet 1994). In addition, in the early 1980s, five federal agencies
553 collaborated to develop an ecological land classification framework integrating vegetation, soils,
554 water, and landform (Driscoll et al. 1984).

555 In the late 1970s, The Nature Conservancy (TNC) initiated a network of state Natural
556 Heritage Programs (NHPs), many of which are now part of state government agencies. The
557 general goal of these programs was inventory and protection of the full range of natural
558 communities and rare species present within the individual states. Because inventory requires a
559 list of the communities being inventoried, the various programs proceeded to develop their own
560 state-specific community classification systems. As TNC started to draw on the work of the
561 NHPs to develop national-level priorities for community preservation and protection, it quickly
562 recognized the need to integrate the disparate state-level vegetation classifications into a
563 consistent national classification.

4. In contrast, classification has been a major activity in Europe throughout the twentieth century, with vegetation scientists largely using the methods of the Braun-Blanquet school. Moreover, vegetation classification gained new impetus in many European countries during the 1970s and 1980s (Rodwell et al. 1995).

564 In the late 1980s, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service initiated a research project to
565 identify gaps in biodiversity conservation (Scott et al. 1993), which evolved into what is today
566 the U.S. Geological Survey's National Gap Analysis Program (GAP; Jennings 2000). This
567 program classifies and maps existing natural and semi-natural vegetation types of the United
568 States on a state and regional basis as a means of assessing the conservation status of species and
569 their habitats. Because a common, widely used, floristically based classification was critical to
570 this work GAP supported TNC's effort to develop a nationwide classification (Jennings 1993).
571 Collaboration between GAP and TNC led to a systematic compilation of alliance-level
572 information from state natural heritage programs and from the existing literature on vegetation
573 (e.g., Bourgeron and Engelking 1994, Sneddon et al. 1994, Drake and Faber-Langendoen 1997,
574 Weakley et al. 1997, Reid et al. 1999). With support from TNC and an array of federal
575 programs, Grossman et al. (1998) and Anderson et al. (1998) produced the first draft of what
576 became the U.S. National Vegetation Classification (USNVC, referred to here as the NVC). The
577 NVC was initially populated with a compilation of described natural vegetation types taken from
578 as many credible sources as could be found and drawn from the experience vegetation ecologists
579 with extensive regional expertise. Although the majority of the types described were not linked
580 to specific plot data, they were often based upon studies that used plot data or on the knowledge
581 of regional and state ecologists (Weakley et al. 1998, Faber-Langendoen 2001).

582 *The Federal Geographic Data Committee and the ESA Vegetation Panel*

583 In the early 1990's the US federal government formally recognized the need for a
584 standard nationwide vegetation classification. In 1990 the government published the revised
585 Office of Management and Budget Circular No. A-16 (Darman 1990)⁵, which introduced spatial
586 information standards. This circular described the development of a National Spatial Data
587 Infrastructure (NSDI) to reduce duplication of information, reduce the expense of developing
588 new geographically based data, and make more data available through coordination and
589 standardization of federal geographic data. The circular established the Federal Geographic Data

5. The circular was originally issued in 1953 to insure that surveying and mapping activities be directed toward meeting the needs of federal and state agencies and the general public, and that they be performed expeditiously, without duplication of effort. Its 1967 revision included a new section, "Responsibility for Coordination." It was revised and expanded again in 1990 to include not just surveying and mapping, but also the related spatial data activities.

590 Committee (FGDC) to promote development of database systems, information standards,
591 exchange formats, and guidelines, and to encourage broad public access.

592 Interagency commitment to coordination under Circular A-16 was strengthened and
593 urgency was mandated in 1994 under Executive Order 12906 (Federal Register 1994), which
594 instructed the FGDC to involve state, local, and tribal governments in standards development
595 and to use the expertise of academia, the private sector, and professional societies in
596 implementing the order. Circular A-16 was revised in 2002 to incorporate the mandates of
597 Executive Order 12906. Under these mandates, the FGDC established a Vegetation
598 Subcommittee to develop standards for classifying and describing vegetation. The subcommittee
599 includes representatives from federal agencies and other organizations. After reviewing various
600 classification options, FGDC proposed to adopt a modified version of the TNC classification.
601 During the review period, ecologists from the National Biological Survey,⁶ TNC, and academia
602 discussed the need to involve the Ecological Society of America (ESA) to provide peer review as
603 well as a forum for discussion and debate among professional ecologists with respect to the
604 evolving NVC (Barbour 1994, Barbour et al. 2000, Peet 1994, Loucks 1995). The FGDC
605 Vegetation Subcommittee invited ESA to participate in the review of the physiognomic
606 standards as well as development of the standards for the floristic levels. This document is a
607 direct product of the collaboration of ESA, FGDC, USGS, and NatureServe to provide formal
608 standards for vegetation classification within the United States.

609 **ESTABLISHING AND REVISING FLORISTIC UNITS OF** 610 **VEGETATION**

611 The following sections present formal guidelines for those seeking to propose or modify
612 associations and alliances represented within the US National Vegetation Classification. It is our
613 intent that these guidelines and procedures will facilitate continued rapid development, wide
614 acceptance, and scientific maturation of the NVC.

6. Now the U.S. Geological Survey's Biological Resources Division.

615 **4. THE ASSOCIATION AND ALLIANCE CONCEPTS**

616 The historical record of vegetation classification, as well as recent developments shows a
617 continuing convergence of the basic concepts that underlie establishment and recognition of
618 associations and alliances. Ecologists have long recognized the need to communicate the context
619 of ecological and biological phenomena and to understand interactions within and among biotic
620 communities. These needs have led to frequent use of "community type" or "vegetation type" as
621 a unit of vegetation. Vegetation types can be understood as segments along gradients of
622 vegetation composition, with more-or-less continuous variation within and among types along
623 biophysical gradients. Conceptualization of vegetation types is derived from analyses of
624 vegetation samples (plots, transects, relevés etc.), as explained more fully in Sections 5-7, and
625 these samples provide the fundamental data for describing vegetation. With the broad
626 assortment of analytical tools and approaches that are now used to assess vegetation patterns, the
627 basic and practical needs for classifying vegetation have led to a substantial unification in
628 approaches to the classification of vegetation.

629 **4.1. ASSOCIATION**

630 The association is the most basic unit of vegetation recognized in the NVC. The earliest
631 definition (Flahault and Schröter 1910a, 1910b) is usually translated as “a plant community of
632 definite floristic composition, uniform habitat conditions, and uniform physiognomy”. Since the
633 1910 discussion was focused on vegetation types, rather than particular stands of vegetation,
634 some translations insert “type” after "community" to clarify that it does not refer to an individual
635 community or stand, but to a conceptual abstraction. Shimwell (1971:52) clarifies the "type"
636 interpretation: "The central concept of the Association was its abstract nature, i.e. the field
637 observer never saw an Association in the field; it was only a stand, just as a herbarium only
638 contains a specimen of a species." Gabriel and Talbot (1984) provided numerous definitions of
639 association, including "a recurring plant community of characteristic composition and structure."
640 Curtis (1959, pg. 51, 53) defined the plant community type, a segment along a continuum, as
641 “more or less similar groups of species recurring from place to place...their lack of an inherent
642 discreteness, however, does not prohibit their orderly arrangement into groups for purposes of
643 study and discussion.” The individual stand was defined simply as a “studiable grouping of

644 organisms which grow together in the same general place and have mutual interactions.” The
645 commonalities evident in most definitions include four central ideas: 1) definite floristic
646 composition, 2) uniform physiognomy and structure, 3) uniform habitat, and 4) a recurring
647 distribution across a landscape or region.”

648 Mueller-Dombois and Ellenberg (1974) recognized that "species assemblages change
649 more or less continuously, if one samples a geographically widespread community throughout its
650 range." Their phrasing highlights an important element, the variability within an association that
651 occurs across its range. In addition, the early recognition of Gleason (1926) that chance plays a
652 major role in the local expression of vegetation has become an important part of our
653 understanding of vegetation composition. Many classifications, including the standards
654 described in Section 6, have been framed around some characteristic range of variation in
655 composition, physiognomy, and habitat rather than the "definite composition, uniform
656 physiognomy and uniform habitat conditions of the original association definition of Flahault
657 and Schröter (1910a, b.). Range of variation then, provides a measure of the breadth of species
658 composition, physiognomy, and habitat that occur within a set of field plot data used to define
659 the association.

660 Three other points should be considered:

- 661 1. Habitat" refers to the combination of environmental or site conditions and natural
662 disturbances that influence the community. Temporal variation in floristic composition
663 due to unusual severe weather events and seasonal variation in phenology are acceptable
664 variation if they do not fundamentally change species presence. Ecological processes
665 such as major disturbances (fire, insects, disease, grazing) and natural succession will
666 generally produce different associations on the same site over time.
- 667 2. Characteristic physiognomy and habitat conditions may include fine-scale patterned
668 heterogeneity (e.g., hummock/hollow microtopography in bogs, shrub/herb structure in
669 semidesert steppe).
- 670 3. Unlike strictly floristic applications of the association (and alliance) concept, the
671 definition for the NVC standard retains an emphasis on both floristic and physiognomic
672 criteria as implied by membership of floristic types in higher order physiognomic units of
673 the classification.

674 Accordingly, establishment of a plant association implies application of a standard set of
675 methods for describing an ecological abstraction, while also pursuing practical classification.
676 The result requires acceptance of a degree of variation in composition and habitat within the
677 classification unit, the association. As a synthesis of the above considerations, we adopt the
678 following definition of association as the basic unit of vegetation:

679 *A vegetation classification unit defined on the basis of a characteristic range of*
680 *species composition, diagnostic species occurrence, habitat conditions and*
681 *physiognomy.*

682 In the context of this definition, diagnostic species refers to any species or group of
683 species whose relative constancy or abundance can be used to differentiate one type from
684 another. Guidelines have been proposed for the minimum number of diagnostic species required
685 to define an association” (e.g., Schaminée et al. 1993). Obviously, the more diagnostic taxa that
686 are used to define an association and the stronger their constancy and fidelity, the better the case
687 for recognizing the unit. Moravec (1993) stated that associations may be differentiated by (1)
688 character species, i.e., species that are limited to a particular type, (2) a combination of species
689 sharing similar behavior (ecological or sociological species groups), (3) dominant species, or (4)
690 the absence of species (groups) characterizing a similar type.

691 Despite the use of diagnostic species in vegetation classification, this is an intrinsically
692 imprecise activity and it must be recognized that diagnostic species can never precisely define
693 lines between two similar associations. In addition to the fact that vegetation varies
694 continuously, species are stochastic in their distributions (given the vagaries of, for example,
695 dispersal, reproduction, and establishment) and chance events influence their occurrence at any
696 given site. For this reason vegetation classification is based on representative or modal plots that
697 define the central concept of the type, but not the edges. Assignment of a plot to an association
698 is determined by composition consistent with a characteristic range of diagnostic species
699 occurrence or abundance. Intermediate plots can be assigned to associations based on measures
700 of similarity, relative occurrence or abundance of diagnostic species, or considerations of habitat
701 and physiognomy. Good practice requires quantitative description of species composition,
702 diagnostic species, and other criteria that minimize ambiguity among associations.

703 There is no consensus on some fixed amount of variation that is acceptable within an
704 association or alliance. Mueller-Dombois and Ellenberg (1974) suggest, as a rule of thumb, that
705 stands with a Jaccard presence/absence index (of similarity to the most typical plot) between
706 25% and 50% could be part of the same association and that stands with greater levels of
707 similarity may better define subassociations. The subject of “stopping rules” in classification is a
708 complex one, and a variety of criteria are often applied, including physiognomic and habitat
709 considerations. In addition, the nature of the particular vegetation itself strongly influences

710 decisions about where to draw conceptual boundaries between vegetation types. Important
711 considerations may include species richness, amount of variation among stands, degree of
712 anthropogenic alteration, and the within-stand homogeneity of the vegetation. No simple rule can
713 be applied to all cases.

714 4.2 ALLIANCE

715 The vegetation alliance is a unit of vegetation determined by the floristic characteristics
716 shared among its constituent associations, and is constrained by the physiognomic characteristics
717 of the higher levels of classification within which the alliance is included. Its makeup is broader
718 in concept than the association (i.e., more floristically and structurally variable), yet it has
719 discernable and specifiable floristic characteristics. We define alliances as:

720 *A vegetation classification unit containing one or more associations, and defined*
721 *by a characteristic range of species composition, habitat conditions,*
722 *physiognomy, and diagnostic species, typically at least one of which is found in*
723 *the uppermost or dominant stratum of the vegetation.*

724 This definition includes both floristic and physiognomic criteria, in keeping with the integrated
725 physiognomic-floristic hierarchy of the NVC. It also builds directly from the association
726 concept. In comparison with the association, the alliance is more compositionally and
727 structurally variable, more geographically widespread, and occupies a broader set of habitat
728 conditions. Characterizing alliances is ideally dependent upon fully documented associations
729 within the alliance, but as a practical matter “low confidence” alliances (see Section 7.1 on
730 classification confidence levels) often need to be created and used before all the component
731 associations can be established (see Section 6). Alliances that are defined narrowly based on
732 specialized local habitats, locally distinctive species, or differ primarily in the relative
733 dominance of major species, are to be avoided.

734 The vegetation alliance concept presented here differs somewhat from the concept used
735 in the more floristically-based Braun-Blanquet approach (Braun-Blanquet 1964, Westhoff and
736 van der Maarel 1973). For example, using the Braun-Blanquet criteria, the Dicrano-Pinion
737 alliance, which typically contains evergreen tree physiognomy, could include common juniper
738 (*Juniperus communis*) shrublands (Rodwell 1991). The Vaccinio-Piceion (or Piceion Excelsae)
739 alliance, with typically evergreen physiognomy, could include broadleaved deciduous birch
740 (*Betula pubescens*) woodlands (Betulion Pubescentis alliance) (Ellenberg 1988, Rodwell 1991).

741 Nonetheless, alliances of the Braun-Blanquet system typically contain broadly uniform
742 physiognomic and habitat characteristics comparable to the concepts and standards put forth
743 here. Specht et al. (1974) used a similar approach to define alliances for Australia.

744 Many forest alliances are roughly equivalent to the "cover types" developed by the
745 Society of American Foresters (SAF) to describe North American forests (Mueller-Dombois and
746 Ellenberg 1974, Eyre 1980). In cases where the cover type is based solely on differences in the
747 co-dominance of major species (e.g. Bald Cypress cover type, Water Tupelo cover type, and
748 Bald Cypress-Water Tupelo cover type), the alliance may be broader than the narrowly defined
749 cover types, or recombine them in different ways based on floristic and ecologic relationships.
750 In cases where the dominant tree species extend over large geographic areas and varied
751 environmental, floristic or physiognomic conditions, the alliance may represent a finer level of
752 classification than the SAF cover type. In these situations, diagnostic species may include
753 multiple dominant or co-dominant tree and understory species that together help define the
754 physiognomic, floristic, and environmental features of an alliance type. For example, the broad
755 ranging Jack Pine forest cover type (Eyre 1980, No. 1) may include at least two alliances, a more
756 closed, mesic jack pine forest type and a more xeric, bedrock woodland type.

757 The alliance is similar in concept to the "series" of Daubenmire, a group of habitat types
758 that share the same dominant species under apparent climax conditions (Pfister and Arno 1980).
759 The series concept emphasizes the composition of the tree regeneration layer more than tree
760 overstory composition in order to reveal the *potential* homogeneity of late-seral or climax
761 canopy conditions based on the current tree population structure. Alliances differ from the series
762 concept in that alliances, like associations, are based on existing vegetation, regardless of
763 successional status. For example, a shrub type that dominates after a fire would be classified as
764 distinct from both the forest type that was burned and the possible forest type that may
765 eventually reestablish on the site.

766 The alliance is somewhat similar in concept to the "Series" widely used in the western
767 United States for grouping similar late-successional associations (and interpreted habitat types)
768 following the basic Daubenmire (1952) conceptual approach (Pfister and Arno 1980). The series
769 concept (of associations) emphasizes the recognition of diagnostic potential climax dominant
770 species based on age and/or size structure data and known relative autecological
771 competitiveness. The presumed final stage of vegetation development is used to assign a stand

772 or vegetation to a series, regardless of its status at the time of observation. For stands of an
773 association where the potential climax species has attained a dominant position, the identified
774 series may be identical to the alliance concept. However, for those stands of an association
775 where the potential climax species is currently subordinate to a dominant seral species, the
776 identified series and alliance would likely be different. Alliances and associations of the NVC
777 differ conceptually from the Daubenmire approach because they are based only on existing
778 vegetation, regardless of potential climax status.

779 **5. VEGETATION FIELD PLOTS**

780 A basic premise underlying these guidelines is that the alliance and association units are
781 to be described and recognized through use of plot data (see guiding principles in Text Box 1,
782 and the discussion of field plot records in Section 2 as well as in the first paragraph of Section 4).
783 A second basic premise is that adherence to common guidelines for recording field plots is of
784 critical importance for the development and consistent application of a scientifically credible
785 NVC. Without data collected in compliance with such guidelines, recognition, description, and
786 comparison of vegetation types could well be inaccurate, inconsistent and less than fully
787 repeatable. The types of information that need to be collected in the field are discussed below
788 and are listed in Appendix 1. A critical component to generating field data that can be integrated
789 with other field data sets as well as used for multiple purposes is a digital schema that defines a
790 data structure. Important progress in describing and understanding associations and alliances
791 will hinge on the integration of plot data from multiple sources. The technical key to generating
792 such plot data is a standard XML schema (see Sperberg-McQueen and Thompson, 2003). A
793 schema for field plot data is discussed further in Section 8 and Appendix 4.

794 **5.1. MAJOR TYPES OF REQUIRED DATA**

795 The purpose of field plots is to record the *vegetation* and its *environmental context*. In
796 addition, later interpretation of information collected in the plot requires *metadata*. Data
797 recorded for field plots for the NVC fall into these three main categories.

- 798 1. Vegetation data: Floristic composition and physiognomy that can be used to classify
799 vegetation constitute the key component of plot data. Floristic data consist of a list of the
800 taxa observed, often recorded by the vertical strata they occur in, and usually associated
801 with some measure of importance such as the relative amount of ground covered by

- 802 them. Vegetation structure is typically assessed in terms of overall cover by vertical
803 strata and the physiognomic attributes of the taxa associated with those strata.
- 804 2. Site data: Vegetation is best interpreted in the context of habitat, geographic location,
805 and stand history information. This includes
- 806 a. abiotic factors such as soils, parent material, elevation, slope, aspect, topographic
807 position, and climate,
 - 808 b. stand history and disturbance regime, and
 - 809 c. geographic location.
- 810 3. Metadata: Data that describe the methods used to obtain vegetation and environmental
811 data, or that are critical for subsequent uses of plot data. Examples of required metadata
812 are the method and precision used to determine plot location, field methods, the
813 nomenclatural (taxonomic) source or standard for identifying and naming plant species,
814 the field personnel (including contact information and institutional affiliation) and the
815 sampling date. Optional metadata include interpretations and reidentifications of plant
816 taxa and the assignment of the plot to a particular type or types within the NVC.

817 Not all studies that use vegetation plot data are focused on classification. Investigators
818 may have a variety of objectives when collecting plot data including, for example,
819 documentation of ecological patterns and processes, assessment of vegetation structure,
820 assessment of long-term change and human impacts, determination of targets for restoration, and
821 validation of remote-sensed data. This section describes the plot information needed to support
822 the development of associations and alliances of the NVC. It is not intended to serve as a
823 definitive guide to recording and describing vegetation; discussion of these issues can be found
824 in other references (e.g., Mueller-Dombois and Ellenberg 1974, Kent and Coker 1992, Jongman
825 et al. 1995). In particular, this section is intended to alert investigators to the major issues that
826 must be considered when collecting vegetation plot data for the purpose of developing or
827 supporting a vegetation classification and to inform them as to the critical data that must be
828 collected for plots to be used in the context of the NVC. If plot data are to be used to support
829 development, refinement and identification of NVC types, investigators need to collect the core
830 data described next.

831 5.2. STAND SELECTION AND PLOT DESIGN

832 *Plot Selection*

833 Vegetation surveys typically focus on detecting the range of vegetation variation in a
834 region, or on a range wide assessment of one or more vegetation types. To achieve adequate

835 representation of the vegetation in a focal area or type, plot selection is usually preceded by
836 reconnaissance (ground or aerial) to assess the major patterns of variation in vegetation (or its
837 underlying environmental gradients) and to develop a method for stand and plot selection. For
838 example, major environmental factors may be used to create an “abiotic grid within which to
839 select plots (e.g., stratified sampling of Peet 1980, or the gradsect technique of Austin and
840 Heyligers 1991). The selection method is a critical step because it determines how well the plots
841 will represent the area under study.

842 Selection of stands (contiguous areas of vegetation that are reasonably uniform in
843 physiognomy, floristic composition, and environment) may be made by either *preferential*
844 (subjective) or *representative* (objective) means, or some combination of these (*sensu* Podani
845 2000). With preferential methods, stands are selected based on the investigator’s previous
846 experience, and stands that are “degraded”, “atypical”, or redundant may be rejected. A stand
847 selected for plot records is considered typical of the vegetation of which it is a part, and each plot
848 recorded is expected to yield a more or less typical description in terms of both floristic
849 composition and physiognomy (Werger 1973). The same is true of representative selection,
850 except that this approach also involves selecting stands with some degree of objectivity so as
851 facilitate characterization of the full universe of vegetation within which the study is being
852 conducted. The selection of representative stands may be via a simple random, stratified random
853 (including the environmental grid or gradsect approach noted above), systematic, or semi-
854 systematic method (Podani 2000). Either preferential or representative methods will yield plots
855 suitable for the NVC, but representative sampling will typically lead to a less biased set of plots.
856 In contrast, the representative method may miss or under sample rare and unusual types.
857 Consequently, it is often necessary to supplement representative sampling with plots from rare or
858 unusual types encountered in the course of field work. When working in highly modified
859 landscapes, preferential selection is often the only way to assure that reasonably natural
860 vegetation is adequately observed and sufficiently understood to be compared to other
861 vegetation. Stratification of a landscape into a priori units within which plots are randomly
862 located represents a hybrid approach and is often the preferred method.

863 For a variety of reasons, stand selection may be limited to only part of the vegetation
864 present in an area. Many studies focus only on natural vegetation, including naturally disturbed,
865 and various successional stages of vegetation. Others may focus exclusively on late-

866 successional or mature natural vegetation. However, in principle, the NVC applies to existing
867 vegetation, regardless of successional status or cultural influence. Criteria used to select stands
868 should be thoroughly documented in the metadata.

869 *Plot Location*

870 Following reconnaissance and stand selection, a plot or series of plots is located within
871 all or some subset of stands. Each plot should represent one entity of vegetation in the field; that
872 is, a plot should be relatively homogeneous in both vegetation and habitat and large enough to
873 represent the stand's floristic composition. Specifically, plots should be large enough and
874 homogeneous enough that the relative importance of the dominant species observed within the
875 plot is comparable to that of the surrounding stand. Of course, the investigator must recognize
876 that communities are never fully homogeneous. Indeed, the main requirements for homogeneity
877 can be met as long as obvious boundaries and unrepresentative floristic or structural features
878 present in the stand are avoided (Rodwell 1991). Decisions about plot placement and
879 homogeneity must be included in the plot metadata. These initial decisions are important, as
880 both stand selection and plot placement within stands affect data quality.

881 Vegetation can be homogeneous at one scale and not at another. Some within-plot
882 pattern is inevitable; small gaps occur within forests owing to death of individual dominants, and
883 bryophytes and herbs can reflect substrate heterogeneity such as occurrence of rocks or logs.
884 Moreover, forests or rangelands examined at a scale of many kilometers can contain
885 homogenous patches of differing age or disturbance history. For the purposes of the NVC the
886 field worker should not seek homogeneity at the scale of either the mosses on a stump or the
887 forests across a landscape, but rather homogeneous stands within which to place plots at some
888 scale between 10 and 100,000 m² ⁽⁷⁾ reflecting a typical pattern of plants co-occurring under
889 common environmental and historical conditions.

890 The floristic composition and structure of a plant community will vary not only in space
891 but also in time. Seasonal changes, even during the growing season, can be dramatic in some
892 types of vegetation. Large shifts in floristic composition over one to several years can occur in
893 response to unusual weather conditions or fire. Some forest types (e.g., mixed mesophytic

7. As used here, "m²" denotes the amount in square meters (see Taylor 1995), e.g., 1,000 m² is the area within a 50 x 20 m plot.

894 forests) may have a diverse and prominent, but ephemeral, spring flora. Some deserts have
895 striking assemblages of annuals that appear only once every few decades. Although plot records
896 for the NVC are based on the existing vegetation at the time of observation, plots that are known
897 or expected to be missing a substantive portion of the likely flora must be so annotated to enable
898 future analysts to properly interpret the data quality. Repeated inventories may be made over the
899 course of a season to fully document the species in the plot. Practically speaking, these repeat
900 visits (which should be documented as such) can be treated as multiple visits to the same plot
901 and recorded as one plot observation record. Conversely, multiple visits over a series of years
902 should be treated as separate plot observations (Poore 1962).

903 *Plot design*

904 Two fundamentally different approaches are commonly used for recording vegetation: (a)
905 a plot where the information recorded is taken from a single *entire* plot, or (b) *subplots*, where
906 the information recorded is taken from a set of smaller plots from within the stand. Both types of
907 plots can provide adequate data for vegetation classification, but each method has its own
908 requirements and advantages. Each of these is discussed next.

909 Data taken from an entire large plot

910 This is an efficient, rapid method for collecting floristic and physiognomic data for
911 classification. The plot size is chosen to ensure that the plot is small enough to remain relatively
912 uniform in habitat and vegetation, yet is large enough to include most of the species that occur
913 within the stand. This approach permits statistical assessments of between-stand variation, but
914 not within-stand variation.

915 Recommended plot size varies, depending on the structure of vegetation (the size of
916 individual plants, spacing, number of vertical layers, etc). Plot sizes have also been based on the
917 need for the plot to adequately represent the vegetation being sampled such that an increase in
918 plot area yields few new species within the stand, and none significant to the vegetation's
919 physiognomy (see Moravec 1973 for a method of mean similarity coefficients). Plots larger than
920 this are acceptable, but plots that are too small to represent the stand's composition and structure
921 are not adequate for developing a vegetation classification. For instance, in most temperate
922 hardwood or coniferous forests, plots of between 200 and 1,000 m² are adequate for
923 characterizing both the herb and the tree strata, whereas in many tropical forests, plots between

924 1,000 and 10,000 m² are required. Grasslands and shrublands may require plots between 100
925 and 200 m², whereas deserts and other arid-zone vegetation may require large plots, typically
926 between 1,000 and 2,500 m² because the vegetation cover is sparse and species may be widely
927 scattered. These recommended plot sizes typically satisfy minimum area calculations
928 (McAuliffe 1990). Specialized studies of fine-scale variation, such as zonation around small
929 wetlands or small sized bryophyte assemblages may well require plots that are smaller still,
930 perhaps only a few m², though such small plots are to be avoided in community classification
931 studies wherever possible.

932 We do not specify or recommend any particular plot shape; in fact, plot shape may need
933 to vary depending on stand shape (e.g., riparian stands tend to be linear). Whenever possible,
934 plot size and shape should be kept constant within a study. Issues of efficiency in plot layout
935 most often dictate the plot shape employed by an investigator.

936 Data taken from a set of smaller subplots

937 Data may be collected from multiple subplots within a stand as an alternative to
938 observation of a single large plot. This approach yields data that can be used to assess internal
939 variability within a stand and to more precisely estimate the average abundance of each species
940 across the stand. It is often used to measure treatment responses or evaluate other experimental
941 manipulations of vegetation. The approach also may be useful for characterizing average
942 vegetation composition in topographically gentle terrain where boundaries between stands may
943 be diffuse. This method is inappropriate for measures of species number per unit area larger than
944 the subplot, but can be helpful for assessing the relative variation within and among stands.

945 Investigators using the multiple small plot methods may locate their sample units
946 randomly or systematically within the stand. The observation unit can be a quadrat, line-transect
947 or point-transect, and can be of various sizes, lengths, and shapes. Quadrats for ground layer
948 vegetation typically range from 0.25 to 5.0 m² and anywhere from 10 to 50 quadrats may be
949 placed in the stand, again, either randomly or systematically. Quadrats for trees, where
950 measured separately, typically are on the order of one m² or more. Even though subplots may be
951 collected over a large portion of the stand, the total area over which data are recorded may be
952 smaller than if the investigator used a single large plot (e.g., 50 one m² quadrats dispersed in a

953 temperate forest stand will cover 50 m², whereas a single large plot would typically cover 100-
954 1000 m²).

955 When deciding between multiple subplots and a single large plot it is important to
956 consider the tradeoff between the greater precision of species abundance obtained with smaller,
957 distributed subplots versus the more complete species list and more realistic assessment of
958 intimate co-occurrence obtained using the single large plot. A major disadvantage of relying
959 solely on subplots to characterize the stand is that it requires a large number of small sample
960 units to adequately characterize the full floristic composition of the stand, a larger number than is
961 generally employed. Yorks and Dabydeen (1998) described how reliance on subplots can result
962 in a failure to assess the importance of many of the species in a plot. Consequently, whenever
963 subplots or transects are used to characterize a stand, we strongly recommend that a list of
964 “additional species present” within a larger part of the stand, such as some fixed area around the
965 subsamples, be included. The classic Whittaker plot contains 25 one m² subplots plus a tally of
966 additional species in the full 1000 m² macroplot, and the California Native Plant Society
967 protocol incorporates a 50 meter point transect supplemented with a list all the additional species
968 in a surrounding 5 x50 m² area (Sawyer and Keeler-Wolf 1995).

969 Hybrid approaches

970 Hybrid methods can combine some of the advantages of the two approaches. Sometimes,
971 several somewhat large subplots (e.g., > 200 m² in a forest) are established to assess internal
972 stand variability. The plots are sufficiently large that, should variability between plots be high,
973 the plots could be classified separately as individual plots. A different strategy is for plots of
974 differing sizes to be nested and used for progressively lower vegetation strata, such that plot size
975 decreases as one moves from the tree layer to the shrub and herb strata owing to the generally
976 small size and greater density of plants of lower strata. Although efficient with respect to
977 quantitative measures of abundance, especially for common species, this method risks under
978 representing the floristic richness of the lower strata, which are often more diverse than the upper
979 strata. This problem can be ameliorated by listing all additional species found outside the nested
980 plots but within the largest plot used for the upper layer. Again, the fundamental requirement is
981 that the plot methods provide an adequate measure of the species diversity and structural pattern
982 of the vegetation for the purposes of classification.

983 Because vegetation pattern and its correlation with environmental factors can vary with
984 plot size (see Reed et al. 1993), no one plot size is *a priori* correct, and it can be desirable to
985 record vegetation across a range of different plot sizes. The widely applied 1000 m² Whittaker
986 (1960) plots and 375 m² Daubenmire (1968) plots contain a series of subplots for herbaceous
987 vegetation. More recently a number of investigators have proposed protocols where multiple plot
988 sizes are nested within a single large plot (e.g., Naveh and Whittaker 1979, Whittaker et al. 1979,
989 Shmida 1984, Stohlgren et al. 1995, Peet et al. 1998). These methods allow documentation of
990 species richness and co-occurrence for a broad range of plot sizes smaller than the overall plot.
991 Typically, they have the added advantage of documenting all vegetation types at several
992 consistent scales of resolution, thereby assuring compatibility with many types of plot data.

993 5.3 PLOT DATA

994 As discussed in section 5.1, three types of data are needed for effective vegetation
995 classification: vegetation data, site data, and metadata. Of these, data on the floristic, structural,
996 and physiognomic composition of the vegetation must meet especially strict criteria.
997 Environmental, or habitat data, such as soil attributes, topographic position, and disturbance
998 history, are also important. However, since the environmental variables most significant to the
999 vegetation of a plot in one region may be insignificant in another region, the requirement of such
1000 variables is less amenable to standardization. Metadata are necessary in order to find certain
1001 types of data as well as to understand how, when, and where they were collected and who
1002 collected them (see Tables 2.1-2.6 of Appendix 1). Overall, it is the quality of the vegetation
1003 data, more than the site data or metadata, that determines whether a plot will be useful in the
1004 NVC.

1005 In the following sections we discuss (a) the types of field plots that may be used, (b)
1006 methods for describing vegetation structure, and (c) methods for describing the floristic
1007 composition of a plot. For vegetation composition, the guidelines call for an estimate of the
1008 overall canopy cover of each plant species in the plot. In addition, the guidelines call for an
1009 estimate of the canopy cover of each species by each stratum. For vegetation structure, the
1010 guidelines call for an estimate of the canopy cover of each strata of vegetation (i.e., tree, shrub,
1011 field layer). These three measurements of leaf canopy cover—by species, species-by-stratum,

1012 and stratum—allow for a three-dimensional representation of the plot and, ultimately, a similar
1013 representation of associations and alliances.

1014 *Plot types*

1015 We have developed guidelines for two different types of plot data, depending on the
1016 objectives and uses of the data. Plots can be used to describe new or revise known alliances
1017 and associations for the NVC classification (*classification plots*). Alternatively, they can
1018 provide supplemental information relevant to the geographic or ecological distribution or
1019 abundance of known NVC types (*occurrence plots*). The minimum set of attributes that should
1020 be collected for classification plots and occurrence plots is listed in Appendix 1. Additionally,
1021 to ensure that as many kinds of plot data as possible are available for developing the NVC,
1022 Appendix 1 distinguishes between those data fields that are minimally *required* for
1023 classification and those data fields that are not required, but reflect best practice and are
1024 *optimal*. For classification plots, the minimal requirement covers information about taxon
1025 identity, taxon canopy cover, plot area, sampling method, date of collection, location, and those
1026 who collected the data (other information can be required if the observation is derived from
1027 literature rather than made in the field; see Appendix 1). Plots that meet only these minimal
1028 requirements are less valuable for classification than those that contain the optimal set of data
1029 fields.

1030 The minimal information required for occurrence plots is driven by the information
1031 needed to simply report an observation of an association or alliance at a location. This
1032 information minimally consists of: the dominant species names and canopy cover values,
1033 geographic coordinates, the name of the association or alliance, and the names of those who
1034 collected the data. This is the information that must be provided for a plot to be archived in the
1035 NVC database (as with classification plots, other information can be required if the
1036 observation is derived from literature rather than made in the field). Additional information,
1037 such as the subdominant and characteristic species and their cover values, plot size and shape,
1038 and additional environmental variables, is important and should be recorded if possible.

1039 In what follows we discuss the main features of the guidelines for *classification* plots.

1040 *Floristic composition*

1041 Species List

1042 For field plots used to classify vegetation, measurements should be designed to detect
1043 and record the vascular plant species composition of the plot. Recording nonvascular species is
1044 expected in vegetation where nonvascular species are dominant. As a minimum standard, only
1045 one field visit is required. Generally, plots should be recorded only when the vegetation is
1046 adequately developed phenologically so that the prevailing cover of each species can be
1047 assessed. However, some plant species may not be visible in certain seasons (e.g., spring
1048 ephemerals) or may be unreachable (e.g., epiphytes, cliff species), and thus not identifiable. All
1049 reasonable efforts should be made to ensure that the occurrence of such species rerecorded is at
1050 least noted.

1051 The phenological aspects of vegetation exhibiting clear seasonal changes in composition
1052 must also be noted (e.g., young grasses, whose abundances may be underestimated in late
1053 spring). In cases where phenological changes are pronounced (especially among dominants),
1054 repeat visits are recommended. If a repeat visit at another phenological period reveals a higher
1055 cover value for a species, that value should be used in analyses. In such cases, the sampling date
1056 of record should show that the plot data are derived from a given range of dates and times.
1057 Methods for recording data from repeat visits can be found in the NVC vegetation plots database
1058 (<http://www.vegbank.org>), which supports both multiple observations of a plot as well as a range
1059 of time periods for a single observation. It is vitally important that when data from such repeat
1060 visits are integrated to represent a complete species list and species importance values that a
1061 temporally related bias is not introduced from stochastic events such as disturbance or from
1062 succession.

1063 At a minimum, data for classification plots must include a comprehensive list of all
1064 vascular plant species visible in the plot at the time of sampling together with an assessment of
1065 their cover. A conscientious effort should be made to thoroughly traverse the plot to compile a
1066 complete species list. Nonvascular plants (e.g. bryophytes and lichens) should be listed where
1067 they play an important role (e.g., peatlands, rocky talus). Detailed treatment of cryptogams is
1068 expected where they are dominant. We recommend, but do not require, that a list of additional
1069 species found in the stand *but outside the plot* also be compiled. It is important that species
1070 within the plot be distinguished from those outside the plot, in order that diversity estimates for
1071 the plot (or area) not be inflated.

1072 All plant taxa should be identified to the finest taxonomic resolution possible. For
1073 example, variety and subspecies level determination should be made routinely where
1074 appropriate. In addition, it is essential that the basis for the name applied for each taxon be
1075 identified. Plant names have different meanings in different reference works, and it is imperative
1076 that the meaning of each name be conveyed by reference to a standard authoritative work. In
1077 lieu of an authoritative work, an investigator may specify an authoritative list such as Kartesz
1078 1999 (*et seq.*), though this should only be done with great caution so as to avoid inadvertent
1079 misidentifications or plant name synonyms, where the same actual species is counted as two or
1080 more different species. Kartesz 1999 is the basis for (but slightly different from) the list
1081 maintained by the USDA PLANTS (2003) database as a taxonomic standard. If using USDA
1082 PLANTS as an authority, it is imperative that the version and observation date be provided.

1083 Species by strata

1084 It is desirable and considered best practice (although not required) that the individuals of
1085 a species listed in a plot also be assigned to the stratum or strata in which they are found. Not all
1086 plants will fit clearly into the strata recognized, but the purpose of listing species by vegetation
1087 structure is to document the composition of the most visible strata of the stand (see the section
1088 “Vertical structure and physiognomy of vegetation” on page 40). Although a species may occur
1089 in more than one stratum because of differences in size among individuals, an individual may
1090 only be assigned to the single stratum in which the majority of its leaf area occurs. When
1091 species cover has been recorded by a life form such as seedling or pole, these values may be
1092 assigned to strata using the crosswalk shown in Table 1.

1093 Cover

1094 Cover is a meaningful measure of abundance for nearly all plant life (Mueller-Dombois
1095 and Ellenberg 1974). Percent cover can be defined generically as the vertical projection of the
1096 crown or shoot area to the ground surface, expressed as a percent (Mueller-Dombois and
1097 Ellenberg 1974). The use of crown or shoot area results in two definitions of cover as follows:

1098 Canopy cover: the percentage of ground covered by a vertical outermost perimeter of the
1099 natural spread of foliage of plants (SRM 1989).

1100 Foliar cover: the percentage of ground covered by the vertical portion of plants. Small
1101 openings in the canopy and intraspecific overlap are excluded (SRM 1989). Foliar cover
1102 is the vertical projection of shoots; i.e., stems and leaves.

1103 Canopy cover is the preferred method of collecting cover because it better estimates the
1104 area that is directly influenced by the individuals of each species (Daubenmire 1968). Canopy
1105 cover, or canopy closure, is easier than foliar cover to estimate from aerial photos and is more
1106 likely to correlate with satellite image analysis. A classification based on canopy cover is
1107 better suited for mapping vegetation than one based on foliar cover. For each species found in
1108 the plot, an overall measure of cover must be cover recorded, and additional species cover
1109 values by strata are recommended. Percent cover has been widely accepted as a useful measure
1110 of species importance that can be applied to all species. As discussed above, cover may be
1111 defined either as canopy cover or as foliar cover. Canopy cover is the recommended form of
1112 cover estimates. Cover values are relatively rapid, reliable, and, for the purposes of vegetation
1113 survey and classification, they accurately reflect the variation in abundance of a species from
1114 stand to stand (Mueller-Dombois and Ellenberg 1974).

1115 Total cover should be recorded for all species in the plot. It is recommended that in
1116 addition to the overall cover value, separate cover estimates be provided for each species in
1117 each of the strata in which it may occur. Recording abundance of species cover by strata
1118 provides a three-dimensional view of the vegetation and facilitates the interpretation of
1119 physiognomic and floristic relationships within the FGDC hierarchy. Cover values should be
1120 absolute rather than a relative portion of a layer (e.g., if a species forms a monospecific stratum
1121 with a cover of 50%, the cover for the species is recorded as 50%, not as 100% of the stratum).
1122 The cover for all species in any single stratum (or overall) may be greater than 100%, as the
1123 foliage of one species within a layer may overlap with that of another. Cover can be converted
1124 from absolute to relative cover at a later stage, if it fits the needs of the investigator. For
1125 occurrence plots, only dominant taxa and their cover values (or another suitable measure of
1126 abundance), along with diagnostic or characteristic species, need be recorded.

1127 Cover scales

1128 Use of cover classes instead of continuous percent cover can speed up fieldwork
1129 considerably. A practical cover scale should be logarithmic, in part because humans can discern
1130 doublings better than a linear scale (e.g., it is far easier to tell the difference between 1 and 2%
1131 cover than between 51 and 52%). In addition, many species are relatively sparse across all
1132 stands and small differences in their cover may be particularly important for classification.

1133 Generally, cover-class scale determinations that are repeatable to within one unit when used by
1134 trained field workers indicate that the precision being required is in balance with the accuracy
1135 that can be achieved. Table 4 provides a comparison of widely used cover-abundance scales.
1136 Among these, the Braun-Blanquet (1932) scale, which has been extensively and successfully
1137 used for vegetation classification purposes (Mueller-Dombois and Ellenberg 1974, Kent and
1138 Coker 1992), has a set of class boundaries at “few” (somewhere between 0 and 1%), 5%, 25%,
1139 50%, and 75%. It provides a common minimal set of cover classes acceptable for classification.
1140 Any scale used for collecting species cover data needs to be convertible to this common scale by
1141 having boundaries at or near 0-1%, 5%, 25%, 50%, and 75%. By this criterion, the North
1142 Carolina (Peet et al 1998) and Krajina (1933) cover class systems are ideal in that they can be
1143 unambiguously collapsed to the Braun-Blanquet (1932) standard, and the Daubenmire (1959),
1144 Pfister and Arno (1980) and New Zealand (Allen 1992, Hall 1992) scales are for practical
1145 purposes collapsible into the Braun-Blanquet (1932) scale without damage to data integrity. The
1146 Domin (1928), Barkman et al (1964), and USFS Ecodata (Hann et al. 1988, Keane et al. 1990)
1147 scales all are somewhat discordant with the Braun-Blanquet (1932) standard.

1148 When recording species cover in a plot, any species noted as being present in the stand,
1149 but not found in the plot, should be assigned a unique cover code, so that these species can be
1150 identified as not part of the plot itself.

1151 Other measures of species importance

1152 Species importance can also be measured as density (number of individuals), frequency
1153 (percentage of quadrats or points having a species present), biomass, basal area, absolute canopy
1154 cover, or some weighted average of two or more importance measures. Such supplemental
1155 measures of importance may add to the value of a plot, but are not required. For data sets having
1156 other measures of species importance than cover, but which are otherwise acceptable for
1157 classification, it may be possible to calculate an estimate of cover. For example, for trees this
1158 may be derived from individual stem measurements or from basal area and density. For forbs
1159 this may be derived from air dried weight. The methods used for this conversion, including
1160 appropriate calibration techniques, should be thoroughly documented.

1161 In North America, tree species abundance has often been assessed using individual stem
1162 measurements, basal area totals, or density. Nonetheless, cover is a requirement for trees

1163 because by using cover it is possible to look at the abundance of all species across all strata and
1164 to assess relationships between and among the strata. However, it can be difficult to accurately
1165 estimate cover of individual tree species in large plots (e.g., > 500 m²). In such cases, basal area
1166 and stem density measures can be used to supplement cover data. In addition, these data will
1167 allow comparisons with a wide variety of other forest plot data. For these reasons, collection of
1168 basal area and density (stem area and stem counts) for tree species is encouraged when such
1169 conditions are encountered.

1170 *Vertical structure and physiognomy of vegetation*

1171 Data on vegetation structure and physiognomy are needed to relate associations and
1172 alliances to the physiognomic and structural categories of the FGDC (1997) hierarchy, but are
1173 not strictly necessary for floristic analysis. Physiognomy and structure have overlapping but
1174 different meanings. Physiognomy is the external or overall appearance of vegetation (Fosberg
1175 1961, Daubenmire 1968, Barbour et al. 1980). In this sense physiognomy is the result of the
1176 growth forms of the dominant plants along with vegetation structure (Mueller-Dombois and
1177 Ellenberg 1974, Barbour et al. 1980). Growth form includes gross morphology, leaf
1178 morphology, and phenological phenomena (Barbour et al. 1980). Vegetation structure relates to
1179 the spacing and height of plants forming the matrix of the vegetation cover. Structure is a
1180 function of plant height, stratification into layers, and horizontal spacing of plants (Mueller-
1181 Dombois and Ellenberg 1974). The physiognomy and structure of plots have historically been
1182 characterized by variety of methods. To be of value as a classification tool for the NVC, the
1183 description of physiognomy and structure must be standardized to permit consistent comparisons
1184 among data sets.

1185 Strata and Growth Form

1186 When characterizing vegetation structure, several related concepts should be carefully
1187 distinguished: (a) growth form, (b) size class, and (c) stratum. Growth form is a description of
1188 the morphology of mature individuals of a species. For example, a tree may be defined as a
1189 woody plant with a single dominant stem, generally taller than 5 m at maturity. A seedling or
1190 sapling of a tree species is still a tree growth form, even if only a few centimeters or meters tall.
1191 Table 4 lists commonly recognized growth forms of plant species. Size class refers to the size of
1192 individual organisms, not the size of the mature individuals of that species. The use of the terms

1193 “seedling” and “sapling,” just above, is an example of size classes that are commonly recognized
1194 in woody plants.

1195 As used by the NVC, a stratum is a layer of growing vegetation defined primarily on the
1196 basis of the height of the plants and to a lesser extent their growth forms (Figure 2). By
1197 convention, each stratum is named for the typical growth form that occupies that layer of
1198 vegetation. For example, the *tree stratum* is the zone of woody vegetation generally occurring
1199 above 5 m in height. However, tree saplings generally occupy the *shrub stratum*, tall shrubs may
1200 occur in the *tree stratum* as well. Individual plants are assigned to a stratum based on their
1201 predominant position or height in the stand, and, secondarily, their growth form. A plot having
1202 mature trees, seedlings, and saplings of the same species would include records of that species as
1203 occurring in each of several different strata. However, the herb growth forms are always placed
1204 in the *field stratum* unless they are epiphytic. Ground-level non-vascular species are placed in
1205 their own *ground stratum*. In describing the vegetation structure of a plot, the purpose is to
1206 record the essential features of the often complex stand conditions, rather than to describe the
1207 layers of vegetation in the greatest possible detail.

1208 The Strata

1209 In terrestrial environments, four basic vegetation strata should be recognized whenever
1210 they are present: *tree*, *shrub*, *field*, and *ground* (the ground layer is in the sense of Fosberg’s
1211 [1961] layer of mosses, liverworts, lichens, and algae). In aquatic environments, *floating*, and
1212 *submerged* strata should be recognized where present. These six strata are needed to convey
1213 both the vertical distribution of overall cover and the predominant growth forms, and help to
1214 place a plot within the NVC hierarchy. Additionally, they are used to convey the abundance of
1215 each species in each stratum so as to provide a more detailed record of vegetation composition
1216 by strata (see below).

1217 The six strata are defined as follows:

1218 Tree stratum: the layer of vegetation where woody plants are typically more than 5 m in
1219 height, including mature trees, shrubs over 5 m tall, and lianas. Epiphytes growing on
1220 these woody plants are also included in this stratum. The contribution of each growth
1221 form (trees, shrubs, etc.) to the tree stratum can be specified using the growth form terms
1222 in Table 1.

1223 Shrub stratum: the layer of vegetation where woody plants are typically more than 0.5 m
1224 tall but less than 5 m in height, such as shrubs, tree saplings, and lianas. Epiphytes may

1225 also be present in this stratum. Rooted herbs are excluded even if they are over 0.5 m in
1226 height, as their stems often die back annually and do not provide a consistent structure.

1227 Field stratum: the layer of vegetation consisting of herbs as well as woody plants less
1228 than 0.5 m in height.

1229 Ground Stratum: the layer of vegetation consisting of non-vascular plants growing on
1230 soil or rock surfaces. This includes mosses, liverworts, hornworts, lichens, and algae.

1231 Floating aquatic stratum: the layer of vegetation consisting of rooted or drifting plants
1232 that float on the water surface (e.g., duckweed, water-lily).

1233 Submerged aquatic stratum: the layer of vegetation consisting of rooted or drifting plants
1234 that by-and-large remain submerged in the water column or on the aquatic bottom (e.g.,
1235 pondweed). In aquatic environments the focus is on the overall strata arrangement of
1236 these aquatic plants. Emergent plant growth forms in a wetland should be placed in the
1237 appropriate strata listed above (e.g., alder shrubs would be placed in the shrub stratum,
1238 and cattail or sedges in the herb stratum).

1239 Epiphytes, vines and lianas are not typically treated as separate strata, rather they are
1240 treated within the strata defined above, but can be distinguished from other growth forms within
1241 a strata using the growth form data field (see Appendix 1). Herbs are restricted to the field
1242 stratum even if they exceed 0.5 m height because they typically die back annually. The moss or
1243 nonvascular stratum is recognized separately because it can form a distinctive stratum in some
1244 vegetation types (such as peatlands), and because it may be the only stratum present in some
1245 habitats. In addition, nonvascular species are not always described by vegetation ecologists
1246 (who may only record vascular species), and recognition of this stratum provides a simple means
1247 of documenting whether or not they were recorded.

1248 Strata may be further divided into substrata. For example, the tree stratum may be
1249 divided into canopy trees and subcanopy trees; the shrub stratum may be divided into tall shrub
1250 and short shrub; and the field stratum may be divided into dwarf-shrub and herb or further into
1251 forb and graminoid. Such subdivisions of the main strata serve to illustrate how the layers of
1252 vegetation are based on both the vertical position and the growth form of the vegetation.

1253 Substrata should always nest within rather than span the six standard strata defined above.

1254 For each stratum, the total percent cover and the prevailing height of the top and base of
1255 the stratum should be recorded. The cover of the stratum is the total vertical projection on the
1256 ground of the canopy cover of all the species in that stratum collectively, not the sum of each
1257 individual species' covers. The total cover of the stratum will, therefore, never exceed 100%
1258 (whereas, adding up the individual cover of species within the stratum could well exceed 100%

1259 since species may overlap in their leaf cover). Details concerning the definition and estimation
1260 of vegetation cover are provided in the section on floristic composition below. The best practice
1261 for recording the canopy cover of strata is to record percent cover as a continuous value;
1262 however, it may be estimated using categorical values of, for example, 5-10% intervals or
1263 another recognized cover scale⁸.

1264 The percent cover of the three most abundant growth forms in the dominant or uppermost
1265 strata should also be estimated (see Table 3 for a list of growth forms). For example, in addition
1266 to total cover estimates for all trees in a stand dominated by the tree stratum, separate cover
1267 estimates of the dominant growth forms (e.g., deciduous broadleaf trees, needleleaf evergreen
1268 trees) should be made. These estimates will help place the plot within the physiognomic
1269 hierarchy of the NVC.

1270 Data conversion

1271 Vegetation sampling protocols may record vegetation structure by a variety of strata or
1272 growth forms. However, for NVC classification plots, vegetation structure should be provided
1273 using the standard criteria described in the previous section (also see Table 1.2 of Appendix 1).
1274 Doing so is important in order to have comparable descriptions of formally recognized types.
1275 When converting data of vegetation structure from another protocol, it is best if the categories
1276 can be readily converted to the strata criteria defined above. Table 1 shows a cross tabulation
1277 among some common growth form categories and the standard NVC strata.

1278 In cases where species or growth form cover values must be composited to provide a
1279 single cover estimate for a given stratum, the percent cover of stratum i can be estimated as
1280 follows:

1281
$$C_i = \left(1 - \prod_{j=1}^n \left(1 - \frac{\% \text{ cov } j}{100} \right) \right) * 100$$

1282 where C_i is the percent cover of stratum i for species or growth form j in stratum i . The
1283 mathematical process for this calculation is shown in Table 2.

⁸ Cover scales that are typically used for species abundance are not very appropriate for strata cover, as strata do not exhibit the same range of cover that species do; namely, many more species are sparse than are abundant, leading to finer distinctions at the lower end of the cover scale. Thus strata cover scales, if used, should consist of a more evenly distributed cover scale.

1284 *Physical data*

1285 Physical data provide important measures of the abiotic factors that influence the
1286 structure and composition of vegetation (see Tables 1.4 and 1.5 of Appendix 1). For
1287 classification purposes, a select set of basic and readily obtainable measures is highly desirable.
1288 Physical features of the stand include elevation, slope aspect and slope gradient, topographic
1289 position, landform, and geology. Desirable soil and water features include soil moisture,
1290 drainage, hydrology, depth of water, and water salinity (where appropriate). The soil surface
1291 should also be characterized in terms of percent cover of litter (including dead stems < 10 cm),
1292 rock, bare ground, woody debris (dead stems > 10 cm), live woody stems, nonvascular plants,
1293 surface water, and other physical objects (see Table 1.4 of Appendix 1). Surface cover estimates
1294 should always add to 100% absolute cover. Habitat and stand conditions should be described,
1295 including landscape context, homogeneity of the vegetation, phenological expression, stand
1296 maturity, successional status, and evidence of disturbance. In many cases recommended
1297 constrained vocabularies (see Appendix 2 for recommended constrained vocabularies also used
1298 for automated “picklists”) have been developed for these data fields and are documented at
1299 <http://www.vegbank.org/>. Plot data should conform to these vocabularies so as to facilitate data
1300 exchange.

1301 *Geographic data*

1302 All plot records must include geocoordinates in the form of latitude and longitude in
1303 decimal degrees as per the WGS 84 datum (also known as NAD83; see EUROCONTROL and
1304 IfEN 1998). An estimate of the precision of the coordinates should be provided as either a
1305 percentage (e.g., plus or minus 5%, or in meters. Where data were originally collected following
1306 some other system (e.g., USGS quadrangles with the NAD27 datum), the original data should
1307 also be included should it become necessary to assess conversion accuracy at some future time.
1308 These original data should include x and y coordinates, the datum or spheroid size used with the
1309 coordinates, and the projection used, if any. Geographic data should include a description of the
1310 method used to determine the plot location (e.g., estimated from a USGS 7.5 minute quadrangle,
1311 use of a geographic positioning system). An estimate of the accuracy of the plot’s location
1312 information should also be included in the form of an estimate that the plot origin has a 95% or
1313 greater probability of being within a given number of meters of the reported location.

1314 Additionally, it may be useful to provide narrative information for plot relocation (see Table 1.3
1315 of Appendix 1).

1316 *Metadata*

1317 Metadata are needed as a high-level directory for specific data and to explain how the
1318 plot data were gathered (see Tables 2.1-2.6 of Appendix 1). All field plot metadata must include
1319 a project name and project description. The approach used in selecting the plot location, as
1320 described in Section 5.2, should be recorded as narrative text. Metadata on plot layout should
1321 include the total plot area in m² and the size of the homogeneous stand of vegetation in which the
1322 plot was located (see Table 1.3 of Appendix 1). Plot metadata should include whether the plot
1323 type is entire or made up of subplots (see Plot Design, Section 5.2). If the plot is made up of
1324 subplot observations, the total area of the subplots, not including the spaces in between the
1325 subplots, should be specified (see Table 2.2 of Appendix 1). Canopy cover method and strata
1326 method used must be included in the metadata, as should the name and contact information of
1327 the lead field investigators. Metadata can be readily generated if the plot data exist within the
1328 VegBank XML schema discussed in Section 8 and Appendix 4.

1329 *Legacy data*

1330 Legacy data are plot data collected prior to the publication of these guidelines or without
1331 any documented effort to comply with these guidelines. Given that collection of vegetation plot
1332 data has been going on in the United States for over a century, including extensive sampling of
1333 some parts of the country, these data may contribute substantially to the improvement of the
1334 NVC. Some plots may represent stands (or even types) that no longer exist. Others may contain
1335 valuable information on the historic distribution and ecology of a plant community, or may
1336 contain important structural data (such as on old-growth features) that may be difficult to obtain
1337 today. Legacy data have no special status and must conform to the same rules as other plot data.
1338 However, care should be taken in importing legacy data to assure maximum compatibility with
1339 current guidelines. In using legacy data there are some difficult issues that should be addressed
1340 in the plot metadata. Problems include: (1) uncertainty about plot location, which is especially
1341 common for data that exist only in published form rather than field records; (2) inadequate
1342 metadata on stand selection, plot placement, and sampling method; (3) uncertainty about species
1343 identity because of changes in nomenclature and lack of voucher specimens; (4) uncertainty

1344 about completeness of floristic data; (5) uncertainty about sampling season; and (6)
1345 incompatibility of the cover or abundance measures used.

1346 **6. CLASSIFICATION AND DESCRIPTION OF FLORISTIC UNITS**

1347 Quantitative plot data constitute the primary descriptor of the floristic units. The
1348 guidelines for describing alliances and associations are based on the assumption that the
1349 description of a type summarizes the analysis of field plots that are representative of the type and
1350 known similar types (Section 5).

1351 **6.1. FROM PLANNING TO DATA INTERPRETATION**

1352 An association represents a numerical and conceptual synthesis of floristic patterns
1353 (Westhoff and van der Maarel 1973, Mueller-Dombois and Ellenberg 1974, Kent and Coker
1354 1992). It is an abstraction, representing a defined range of floristic, physiognomic, and
1355 environmental variation. Alliances represent a similar kind of abstraction, but at a more general
1356 level. The definition of associations and alliances as individual units of vegetation is the result
1357 of a set of classification decisions based on field observation and data analysis. The process can
1358 be conceptualized in three stages: (1) scope and planning of plot observation, (2) data collection
1359 and preparation, and (3) data analysis and interpretation.

1360 *Scope and planning of plot observation*

1361 For a classification effort to be effective, plots should be collected from as wide a
1362 geographic area as possible. Although only a few plots may be sufficient to determine that a
1363 distinct type is warranted, more widespread records (ideally covering the full geographic and
1364 environmental range expected) are generally necessary for a type to be adequately characterized
1365 and understood in comparison to others that may be conceptually similar. However, not all field
1366 observations can be this comprehensive, and we recognize the importance of drawing on field
1367 plots collected by multiple investigators. For this reason, those interested in contributing to the
1368 classification, even if they are not conducting extensive fieldwork, should conform to these
1369 guidelines so that their data and interpretations can be integrated with the data of others to
1370 contribute to a larger classification data set.

1371 *Data collection and preparation*

1372 Vegetation data from all available, high-quality data sets should be combined with any
1373 new field data and various supplemental environmental data to provide the basic information for
1374 comprehensive documentation of any given type. Where data are applied that do not meet
1375 minimum guidelines for quality, consistency, and geographic completeness, their limitations
1376 must be explicitly described.

1377 Data preparation requires that plant identification be unambiguously documented by
1378 reference to both appropriate scientific names and published sources for documenting the
1379 meaning of those names. We recommend that, unless there are specific reasons for a different
1380 standard, plant nomenclature for the NVC follow Kartesz (1999), USDA PLANTS
1381 (<http://plants.usda.gov/>), or ITIS (<http://www.itis.usda.gov/index.html>), as explained in Section
1382 6.3 and in Section 8.1.

1383 In response to the need to combine field plot data sets from different sources, the ESA
1384 Vegetation Panel supports a public database of vegetation plots, known as VegBank
1385 (<http://www.vegbank.org>). VegBank is intended to facilitate documentation and reanalysis of
1386 data, ease the burden of data preparation, and facilitate mining of existing data from different
1387 sources, including standardizing plant names and their taxonomic concepts (see Section 8).

1388 *Classification analysis and interpretation*

1389 Two criteria must be met in order for any analysis of vegetation types to be robust. First,
1390 the plot records employed must represent the expected compositional, physiognomic, and site
1391 variation of the proposed vegetation type or group of closely related types. Second, there must
1392 be sufficient redundancy in plot composition to allow clear identification of the patterns of
1393 compositional variation.

1394 Various methods are available for identification of environmental and floristic pattern
1395 from matrices of species occurrences in field plots. The substantial menu of available analytical
1396 methods allows individual researchers to select those methods that provide the most robust
1397 analyses for the available data (e.g., Braun-Blanquet 1932, Mueller-Dombois and Ellenberg
1398 1974, Jongman et al. 1995, Ludwig and Reynolds 1988, Gauch 1982, Kent and Coker 1992,
1399 McCune and Mefford 1999, McCune et al. 2002, Podani 2000).

1400 The approaches most commonly used in the identification and documentation of
1401 vegetation pattern are direct gradient analysis, ordination, and clustering (including tabular
1402 analysis). Direct gradient analysis typically involves representation of floristic change along
1403 specific environmental or geographic gradients, whereas ordination is used to arrange stands
1404 strictly in term of similarity in floristic composition. In both cases discontinuities in plot
1405 compositions can be recognized, or continuous variation can be partitioned into logical
1406 segments. Clustering is used to combine stands into discrete groups based on floristic
1407 composition. For each of these techniques a range of mathematical tools is available. The
1408 specific tools employed should be carefully documented and explained. For example, the initial
1409 matrix of species by plots should be documented directly or by reference to the plots employed
1410 and notes on taxonomic adjustments needs for cross-plot consistency. If analysis of the plots
1411 with respect to environmental factors is undertaken, the environmental data employed must also
1412 be documented and made available either by appendices to the proposal or by a permanent
1413 publicly accessible digital archive. An example of such an archive is VegBank.

1414 Preparation of data requires identification of possible sources of noise and of outliers in
1415 the data. The narrative for a type description should include documentation of any significant
1416 assumptions, known limitations, or inconsistencies in the data employed. In particular, methods
1417 used for rejecting plots based on outlier analyses should be documented (examples of outlier
1418 identification for gradient analysis are provided in Belsey, 1980), and for ordination and
1419 clustering in Tabachnik and Fidell (1989); also see the outlier analysis function in McCune and
1420 Mefford (1999). If novel methods are used, they should be described in detail.

1421 An important step in analysis is standardizing taxonomic resolution such that the
1422 taxonomic level at which organisms are resolved and the taxonomic standard employed are
1423 consistent across all plots. Potential causes for multiple levels of taxonomic resolution in a plot
1424 data set include (a) observer inability to consistently determine taxa to the same level, commonly
1425 resulting in the field notations such as “(genus) ssp”; (b) a group of taxa that intergrades, that are
1426 not readily distinguished on morphological grounds, or are not well described or understood; and
1427 (c) infraspecific taxa that are inconsistently recognized by field workers, resulting in some but
1428 not all occurrences in the data set being resolved at a very fine taxonomic level. Because of the
1429 variety of reasons for resolving individual taxa differently for any given plot, few standards for
1430 dealing with this important problem have been established. Nonetheless, some general practices

1431 should be followed. (1) The rules and procedures used by an investigator in standardizing
1432 taxonomic resolution within a data set must be carefully documented and explained. (2)
1433 Dominant taxa must be resolved to at least the species level. (3) Those plots having genus level
1434 entities with a combined total cover of >20% will generally be too floristically incomplete, and
1435 under some circumstances those plots having >10% of their entities resolved at the genus level
1436 or coarser may be excluded. (4) Ecologists should strive for the finest level of taxonomic
1437 resolution possible. When aggregation of subspecies and varieties to the species level is
1438 necessary, it should be carefully documented. Narratives about vegetation types that discuss the
1439 subspecies and varieties that were aggregated to the species level for the numerical analysis can
1440 be valuable for interpretation of the results reported.

1441 Methods of data reduction and analysis should be described in detail and the rationale for
1442 their selection documented. Documentation should include any data transformations and
1443 similarity measures employed. Where possible, more than one analytical method should be
1444 used, and converging lines of evidence should be clearly presented. Tabular and graphical
1445 presentation of such evidence as biplots of compositional and environmental variation,
1446 dendrograms illustrating relationships among clusters, and synoptic tables summarizing
1447 community composition can be critical. Criteria used to identify diagnostic species, such as
1448 level of constancy, fidelity, etc, should be clearly specified. Tables and graphics by themselves
1449 do not determine associations, but can provide the quantitative basis for their identification.

1450 A tabular summary of diagnostic and constant species should be provided. Constant
1451 species are those occurring in > 60% (i.e. the top two Braun-Blanquet (1932) constancy classes)
1452 of the field plots used to define a type.

1453 Finally, care must be taken to assure that analysis incorporates appropriate geographic
1454 variation and that the resultant classification and associated summary tables are not distorted by
1455 spatial clumping of plot records. Plots sometimes tend to be spatially aggregated because of the
1456 local focus of field investigators. In such cases a set of plots may look distinctive using
1457 conventional numerical methods simply because of the intrinsic spatial autocorrelation of
1458 vegetation plots. This may be a particular problem when field data are generally scarce across a
1459 region but locally abundant in portions of the range where intensive surveys have been
1460 conducted. Further research on the significance of and methods for measuring the spatial
1461 autocorrelation of floristic composition are needed.

1462 Insular vegetation can be particularly prone to spatially correlated discontinuities.
1463 Whereas the matrix vegetation of a region generally tends to vary continuously across the
1464 landscape, insular vegetation of patch-like habitats tends to be discontinuous owing to chance
1465 events of plant migration and establishment. It is not productive to recognize a unique
1466 association for every glade or rock outcrop in a region generally dominated by deep soils, yet
1467 this can result if associations are recognized solely based on discontinuities in compositional
1468 data or dissimilarity measures among local types. When classifying such insular vegetation,
1469 researchers should attempt to factor out similarity patterns driven simply by degree of spatial
1470 proximity and the associated chance events of plant dispersal. Yet, unique types of insular
1471 vegetation do exist and can only be identified with adequate field sampling.

1472 There are a wide variety of methods and techniques that can be used to identify and
1473 describe an association, but the goal remains the same: to circumscribe types with defined
1474 floristic composition, physiognomy, and habitat that comprehensively tessellate (cover) the
1475 universe of vegetation variation. We do not prescribe any one technique or approach to achieve
1476 this end (see also Section 4); investigators are free to explore any number of techniques. The
1477 inevitable occurrence of alternative competing type definitions will be resolved through dialog
1478 and the peer review process (see Section 7).

1479 *Special consideration in the description of alliances*

1480 Development or revision of alliances is typically based on the same kinds of data and
1481 analysis used to define associations. Alliances can be defined as more generalized types that
1482 share some of the diagnostic species found in the associations, especially in the dominant layer.
1483 However, because the definition of alliances relies more strongly on the species composition of
1484 the dominant layer, and because alliances are often wide ranging, it may take more
1485 comprehensive analyses to resolve alliances based on a quantitative approach as compared to
1486 associations.

1487 The methods for classifying alliances depend on the degree to which associations that
1488 make up a given alliance have previously been described and classified. Under data-rich
1489 conditions, alliances should be defined by aggregating associations based on quantitative
1490 comparisons of species abundances. If a number of associations have species in common in the
1491 dominant or uppermost canopy layer, and those same species are absent or infrequent in other

1492 associations, then the associations with those shared dominants can be joined as an alliance.
1493 Similarity in ecological factors and structural features should also be considered. Care is needed
1494 to ensure that a rangewide perspective is maintained when considering how to best aggregate
1495 associations. In cases where no truly diagnostic species exist in the upper layer, species that
1496 occur in a secondary layer may be used, especially where the canopy consists of taxa of broad
1497 geographic distribution, or the alliance occupies a diverse range of ecological settings (Grossman
1498 et al. 1998).

1499 Under data-poor conditions, new alliances may be provisionally identified through
1500 quantitative analysis of data on species in the dominant stratum (e.g. comprehensive tree layer
1501 data in forests), combined with information on the habitat or ecology of the plots. Alliance types
1502 developed through such incomplete data fail to meet the highest standards for defining floristic
1503 units described in Section 7. To improve the confidence in these units, it is necessary to redefine
1504 them through analysis of full floristic information, such as plots that represent all of the
1505 associations that may be included in the alliance.

1506 6.2. DOCUMENTATION AND DESCRIPTION OF TYPES

1507 The classification process requires accurate documentation of how and why a particular
1508 vegetation type has been recognized and described, as well as a standardized, formal description,
1509 or monograph, of each named type. Although, vegetation types may be defined and published
1510 through many means and in many venues including the traditional scientific literature, their
1511 description may vary widely in methodology and approach, and lack the consistency needed for
1512 an accessible, standardized, comprehensive classification. Descriptions of alliances and
1513 associations need to: (a) explicitly document the vegetation characteristics that define the type,
1514 including any significant variation across geographic or environmental gradients; (b) summarize
1515 the relationship of the type to habitat, ecological factors and community dynamics; (c) identify
1516 the typical plots upon which the type is based; (d) describe the analyses of the field data that led
1517 to recognition of the type; (e) assess the confidence level of the type; and (g) provide a
1518 synonymy to previously described types (see Box 2) and document the relationship to similar
1519 NVC types. The rationale for these criteria is explained in more detail next, and an example of a
1520 type description is provided in Appendix 3.

1521 *Overview*

1522 The overview section provides a summary of the main features of the type. First, the
1523 names of the type are listed following the nomenclatural rules in Section 6.4 including Latin
1524 names and their translated names (i.e., species common names). A colloquial or common name
1525 for the type may be provided. Second, the association's placement within an alliance is
1526 indicated (if a new alliance is required, a separate description should be provided); for an
1527 alliance, placement within a formation should be indicated. Finally, a summary is provided that
1528 describes the type concept, including the geographic range, environment, physiognomy and
1529 structure, floristics, and diagnostic features of the type.

1530 *Vegetation*

1531 The association and alliance concepts are defined primarily using floristics and
1532 physiognomy, supplemented with environmental data to assess ecological relationships among
1533 the species and types.

- 1534 1. Floristics: This section should summarize the species composition and average cover in
1535 the plots for all species, preferably by strata. Issues relating to the floristic variability of
1536 the type are highlighted. Tables are provided in the following form:
- 1537 a. A stand table of floristic composition, preferably for each stratum, showing
1538 constancy, mean, and range of percent cover (Table 6). Criteria for inclusion in
1539 the table should be specified. It is recommended that all species with greater than
1540 20% constancy be included to facilitate comparisons of species patterns with that
1541 of other types. Where a more abbreviated, representative list is required,
1542 prevalent species (*sensu* Curtis (1959) can be listed as the “*n*” species with
1543 highest constancy, where “*n*” is the mean number of species per plot).
 - 1544 b. A summary of diagnostic species, through a tabular arrangement, a synoptic table,
1545 or other means of identifying and displaying diagnostic species.
 - 1546 c. The compositional variability of the type across the range of its classification
1547 plots should be discussed. A discussion of possible subassociations or variants
1548 may be useful, especially for future refinement of type concepts.
- 1549 2. Physiognomy: This section should describe the physiognomy and dominant species of
1550 the types, including physiognomic variability across the range of the plots being used.
1551 Summary information is provided as applicable for each of the main strata (tree, shrub,
1552 herb, nonvascular, floating, and submerged; Table 5), including their height and percent
1553 cover. Dominant growth forms are also noted.
- 1554 3. Dynamics: This section provides a summary of the successional and disturbance factors
1555 that influence the stability and within-stand pattern of the type. Where possible, a
1556 summary of the important natural or anthropogenic disturbance regimes, successional
1557 trends, and temporal dynamics should be provided for the type. Information on

1558 population structure of dominant or characteristic species may be appropriate. In some
1559 cases a change of disturbance regime is itself an important irregular form of disturbance.
1560 These should be described and recorded as disturbances in and of themselves. For
1561 example a change in fire frequency may be seen as catastrophic disturbance to a fire
1562 adapted community, from which the community may not reassemble. In some
1563 landscapes today there is a positive feedback between changes to disturbance regimes
1564 and floristic composition, resulting in new types of ecosystems of yet unknown
1565 successional trajectories.

1566 *Environmental Summary*

1567 An overview should be provided of the general landscape position (elevation,
1568 topographic position, landforms, and geology), followed by more specific information on soils,
1569 parent material, and any physical or chemical properties that affect the composition and structure
1570 of the vegetation. Preferably, these data are also provided as summary tables of the available
1571 categorical and quantitative environmental variables.

1572 *Geographic Distribution*

1573 This section should include a brief textual description (not a list of places) of the
1574 geographic range (present and historic) of the type. A list of states and provinces where the type
1575 occurs, or may occur, can help describe the geographic scope of the type concept. The
1576 description should distinguish between those jurisdictions where the type is known to occur and
1577 those where the type probably or potentially occurs. Also, jurisdictions where the type is
1578 estimated to have occurred historically but has been extirpated should be provided if possible.

1579 *Plot Records and Analysis*

1580 This section should describe the plots and the analytical methods used to define a type, as
1581 well as where the plot data are archived. The plots used must have met the criteria for
1582 *classification plots* (see Section 5.3 and Appendix 1). The plot data must be deposited in a
1583 publicly accessible archive that meets the standards set forth in Section 8. Information should be
1584 provided on factors that affect data consistency, such as taxonomic resolution or completeness of
1585 physiognomic-structural or environmental information. Range-wide completeness and
1586 variability in the geographic or spatial distribution of plot locations should be described (see
1587 discussion of problems with spatial autocorrelation in Section 6.2). Finally, the methods used to
1588 prepare, analyze, and interpret the data should be described, including outlier analyses, distance
1589 measures, numerical and tabular techniques, and other interpretation tools. Occurrence plots that

1590 may have been used to generally estimate the geographic range of a type or some other
1591 characteristic should be identified.

1592 *Classification Confidence*

1593 This section summarizes the overall confidence level for the type: high, moderate, or low,
1594 following the criteria presented in Section 7. These levels reflect the quality and extent of data
1595 used and the methods employed to describe and define a type. Data gaps should be identified
1596 where appropriate and suggestions made for further analysis or research. Confidence level is an
1597 important tool for maintaining clear standards for the relative quality of the types that are
1598 included in the NVC. Formal designation of confidence level will be a role of the peer review
1599 process (see Section 7).

1600 *Relationships among types and synonymies*

1601 A section on synonymies is provided that lists other previously defined types that the
1602 author considers synonymous with the type. In addition, the relationships with closely related
1603 types are described here.

1604 *Discussion*

1605 Possible subassociation or suballiance types or variants, if appropriate, should be
1606 discussed in greater detail here along with other narrative information.

1607 *Citations*

1608 A set of citations of references used in the descriptive fields above is provided in this
1609 section, including references to the literature or other synoptic tables comparing this type to
1610 similar types.

1611 6.3. NOMENCLATURE OF ASSOCIATIONS AND ALLIANCES

1612 *Rationale*

1613 The primary purpose of naming the units in a classification is to create a standard label
1614 that is unambiguous and facilitates communication about the type. A secondary goal is to create
1615 a name that is meaningful. Finally, a name must not be so cumbersome that it is difficult to
1616 remember or use. These purposes, though, are sometimes in conflict. For instance, the primary
1617 purpose of an unambiguous label is met by a number (e.g., “Association 2546”), but such a label
1618 is not meaningful or easy to remember. A long descriptive name is meaningful, but difficult to

1619 remember and use. To meet these varying requirements, the guidelines set forth here strike a
1620 compromise between these needs, including the use of alternative names for a type (see also
1621 Grossman et al. 1998, page 23).

1622 There are two very different nomenclatural approaches to naming associations and
1623 alliances: (a) that based on a more descriptive approach, such as practiced by the habitat type
1624 approach in the western United States (e.g., Daubenmire 1968, Pfister and Arno 1980) as well as
1625 the current NVC (Grossman et al. 1998; see also similar approaches used by Canadian Forest
1626 Ecosystem Classification manuals in Sims et al. 1989), and (b) the more formal syntaxonomic
1627 code of the Braun-Blanquet approach (Westhoff and van der Maarel 1973, Weber et al. 2000).
1628 The descriptive approach uses a combination of dominant and characteristic species to name the
1629 type. No formal process for amendment or adoption of names need be followed. By contrast,
1630 the Braun-Blanquet approach follows a formalized code that allows individual investigators to
1631 assign a legitimate name that sets a precedent for subsequent use in the literature, much like
1632 species taxonomic rules. In the Braun-Blanquet approach only two species are allowed in an
1633 alliance name, and their name follows Latin grammatical requirements. Hybrid approaches have
1634 also been suggested, for example, by Rejmanek (1997, see also Klinka et al. 1996, Ceska 1999).
1635 Here we adopt the descriptive approach and, as explained in Section 7, rely on a peer-review
1636 process to maintain appropriate nomenclature. However, as tracking the ever-changing usages
1637 of names and concepts of organisms (which forms the basis for the names of associations and
1638 alliances) is a challenging task, we also rely on a technical implementation of concept-based
1639 taxonomy through the development of VegBank and as described in greater detail in Section 8
1640 (also see Berendsohn 1995, Pyle 2004).

1641 *Nomenclatural rules*

1642 Each association is assigned a scientific name. The scientific name also has a standard
1643 translated name; that is, the Latin names of the nominal species used in the scientific name are
1644 translated to common names based on Kartesz (1994, 1999) for English-speaking countries. It is
1645 desirable that common names be provided in French, and Spanish if translation names exist.
1646 Finally, each association and alliance is assigned a database code.

1647 The names of dominant and diagnostic taxa are the foundation of the association and
1648 alliance names. The relevant dominant and diagnostic taxa that are useful in naming a type are

1649 available from the tabular summaries of the types. Names of associations and alliances should
1650 include at least one or more species names from the dominant stratum of the type. For alliances,
1651 taxa from secondary strata should be used sparingly. Among the taxa that are chosen to name
1652 the type, those occurring in the same strata (tree, shrub, herb, or nonvascular, floating,
1653 submerged) are separated by a hyphen (-), and those occurring in different strata are separated
1654 by a slash (/). Species that may occur in a type with less constancy may be placed in
1655 parentheses (Box 4). Taxa occurring in the uppermost stratum are listed first, followed
1656 successively by those in lower strata. Within the same stratum, the order of names generally
1657 reflects decreasing levels of dominance, constancy, or diagnostic value of the taxa. Where there
1658 is a dominant herbaceous stratum with a scattered woody stratum, names can be based on species
1659 found in the herbaceous stratum and/or the woody stratum, whichever is more characteristic of
1660 the type.

1661 Association or alliance names include the FGDC (1997) class in which they are placed
1662 (e.g., closed tree canopy, shrubland, herbaceous vegetation, etc; see Figure 1). For alliances, the
1663 term alliance is included in the name to distinguish these units from association units (Box 4).

1664 In cases where diagnostic species are unknown or in question, a more general term is
1665 allowed as a “**placeholder**” (e.g., *Pinus banksiana* - (*Quercus ellipsoidalis*) / *Schizachyrium*
1666 *scoparium* - **Prairie Forbs** Wooded Herbaceous Vegetation), but only in the case of types with
1667 low confidence. An environmental or geographic term, or one that is descriptive of the height of
1668 the vegetation, can also be used as a modifier when such a term is necessary to adequately
1669 characterize the association. For reasons of standardization and brevity, however, this is kept to
1670 a minimum. Examples are: (a) *Quercus alba* / *Carex pennsylvanica* - *Carex ouachitana* **Dwarf**
1671 **Forest**, and (b) *Thuja occidentalis* Carbonate Talus Woodland. The least possible number of
1672 species should be used in forming a name. The use of up to five species may be necessary to
1673 define associations, recognizing that some regions contain very diverse vegetation, with
1674 relatively even dominance, and variable total composition. For alliances, no more than three
1675 species may be used.

1676 If desired, a colloquial or regionally common name can also be created. The common
1677 name may be used to facilitate understanding and recognition of the community type for a more
1678 general audience, much like the common name of species.

1679 Nomenclature for vascular plant species used in type names should follow USDA
1680 PLANTS (<http://plants.usda.gov/>), or the current version of ITIS
1681 (<http://www.itis.usda.gov/index.html>). The date(s) that the database was consulted should be
1682 included in the metadata, as these web sites are frequently updated.

1683 Because of the broad use of PLANTS and ITIS in North America, their use must be
1684 accepted in the NVC. These two public databases are based on the work of Kartez (1994, 1999).
1685 The current lack of version numbers for these databases, however, presents a serious limitation
1686 since they are continuously changing. In lieu of version numbers, authors should report the year
1687 that the database was accessed. An additional and most serious limitation in using these sources
1688 as a nomenclatural reference is that they are not linked bibliographically to circumscribed
1689 taxonomic concepts. They are, nonetheless, the best and most widely used and electronically
1690 available public sources of plant names in North America. The Panel is currently working to
1691 link each name to a published taxonomic concept. Users of the NVC and VegBank are free to
1692 use any species list as long as they can map their names to names and concepts of a particular
1693 version (or year) of PLANTS or ITIS.

1694 There is a very real probability that some applications of names will not fit those in
1695 PLANTS, in which case an alternative published work will need to be referenced. A critical
1696 remaining issue is that, in part because the plant names in PLANTS are not linked to specific
1697 concepts, there are often many name synonyms for a given concept and a variety of concepts are
1698 applied to a given name.

1699 *Cultivated vegetation*

1700 The nomenclature rules described above apply to natural (near-natural and seminatural)
1701 vegetation (see Grossman et al. 1998). We have not formally set guidelines for how to sample,
1702 describe, and define cultivated types of vegetation. However, the NVC is intended to be
1703 comprehensive for all vegetation, and the FGDC hierarchy separates the formations of cultivated
1704 vegetation and natural/semi-natural vegetation into different subgroups (Figure 1). For example,
1705 evergreen treed plantations are in separate formations from natural evergreen treed formations.
1706 Recognizing that the formal association and alliance concepts as such may not apply to planted
1707 or cultivated kinds of vegetation (Section 4), they can still be identified, named and placed below
1708 the physiognomic levels of the hierarchy by users who want to develop the “planted/cultivated”

1709 part of the NVC more fully. We recommend that the nomenclature for planted and cultivated
1710 types follow the nomenclature rules given above, with the exception that the term “alliance” not
1711 be included as part of the name, and the use of the physiognomic class name is optional,
1712 depending on the vegetation type. A descriptor of the kind of planted cultivated vegetation being
1713 described should always be included. Units at the “alliance” level should be pluralized and at
1714 the association level should be singular. For example, *Pinus ponderosa* Plantation Forests (at the
1715 alliance level), *Pinus ponderosa* Rocky Mountain Plantation Forest (at the association level), ,
1716 *Zea mays* Crop Field.

1717

1718 **7. PEER REVIEW**

1719 The USVC must be open to change in the sense that any person (independently or
1720 representing some institution) is free to submit proposed additions and changes, and that the
1721 rules, standards and opportunities are the same for all potential contributors, regardless of
1722 institutional affiliation. Although we describe a uniform set of guidelines for sampling,
1723 recognizing, describing, and naming types, these guidelines allow for a variety of approaches to
1724 defining associations and alliances. This is because the concepts themselves are somewhat
1725 general in that they capture assemblages of taxa whose individual local distributions are the
1726 result of complex biophysical interaction and chance, but which nonetheless produce landscape
1727 pattern as recognizable and mappable habitat.

1728 There is no one single correct classification, rather, alternative synthetic solutions are
1729 possible. Choice among such alternatives should be based on established best practices and the
1730 good judgment of experienced practitioners. Thus, a key component of this process must be a
1731 formal, impartial, scientifically rigorous peer review process for floristic units, through which
1732 proposals to recognize new units or change accepted units are evaluated.

1733 There are a variety of different ways to maintain a standardized set of alliance and
1734 association types for the NVC. One model is that used in plant taxonomy where an individual
1735 worker or group of workers use credible scientific methods to define a taxon, follows generally
1736 accepted rules for describing and naming the taxon, and publishes the results in a journal after
1737 which the results can be accepted or rejected by individual scientists as they deem appropriate.
1738 In some cases an expert source (a person or organization) maintains a list of taxa that it chooses

1739 to recognize as valid. Zoological nomenclature is similar, except that by convention the most
1740 recent publication takes precedence when publications are in conflict. A second model is for a
1741 professional body to administer a formal peer-review process, whereby individuals, who publish
1742 their results as they choose, also submit their results to a professional body. That body ensures
1743 that consistent standards are followed to maintain an up-to-date rigorous list of types and their
1744 descriptions. Such an approach is used by the American Ornithological Union⁹ for North
1745 American bird lists. A third model is provided by the Natural Resource Conservation Service
1746 which maintains the USDA soil taxonomy (NRCS 2001) as one of its official functions. The
1747 peer-review process we outline here is a hybrid of the second and third models in that changes
1748 and additions to the classification must be made within the context of the current classification
1749 such that the resultant units continue to form a comprehensive and authoritative list, and the peer
1750 review is an open process maintained by professional organizations in collaboration with other
1751 interested parties.

1752 An authoritative peer review process is necessary to maintain the consistency, credibility,
1753 orderly progress, and rigor of the classification. This process should be administered by an
1754 “NVC Peer Review Board” under the aegis of an institution capable of providing independent
1755 and disinterested reviewers of appropriate training and experience in plant community
1756 classification.

1757 7.1 CLASSIFICATION CONFIDENCE

1758 To maximize applicability of the NVC, coverage of vegetation types should be as
1759 comprehensive as possible. Consequently, it will be desirable to recognize, at least temporarily,
1760 some types that do not comply with all the best-practice standards identified in this document.
1761 As part of the NVC peer-review process, each type will be assigned a “confidence level” based

9. Members of the American Ornithological Union’s (AOU) Committee on Classification and Nomenclature keep track of published literature for any systematic, nomenclatural, or distributional information that suggests something contrary to the information in the current checklist or latest supplement. This could be, for example, on a revision to a taxonomic group or on a species new to the area covered by the AOU. A member then prepares a proposal for the rest of the committee, summarizing and evaluating the new information and recommends whether a change should be made. Proposals are sent and discussion takes place by email and a vote is taken. Proposals that are adopted are gathered together and published every two years in *The Auk* as a Supplement to the AOU Check-list (R. Banks pers. comm. 2000).

1762 on the relative rigor of description and analysis used to define it. Two additional categories are
1763 described for associations or alliances that have not been formally recognized.

1764 *Classification confidence levels of accepted types*

1765 High: Classification is based on quantitative analysis of verifiable, high-quality
1766 classification plots that are published in full or are archived in a publicly accessible database.
1767 Classification plots must meet the minimum requirements specified in Section 5 and as shown in
1768 Appendix 1. High quality classification plots must represent the known geographic distribution
1769 and habitat range of the type. In addition, plots that form the basis for closely related types must
1770 be compared. For an alliance, the majority of component associations must have a high to
1771 moderate level of confidence.

1772 Moderate: Classification is lacking in either geographic scope or degree of quantitative
1773 characterization and subsequent comparison with related types, but otherwise meets the
1774 requirements for a high level of confidence. For an alliance, many associations within the type
1775 may have a Moderate to Low level of classification confidence.

1776 Low: Classification is based on plot data that are incomplete, not accessible to others, or
1777 not published; or, based on qualitative analysis, anecdotal information, or community
1778 descriptions that are not accompanied by plot data. Local experts have often identified these
1779 types. Although there is a high level of confidence that they represent significant vegetation
1780 entities that should be incorporated in the NVC, it is not known whether they would meet the
1781 guidelines for floristic types in concept or in the NVC classification approach if data were
1782 available. Alliances are classified as low if defined primarily from incomplete or unpublished
1783 and inaccessible plot data (e.g., plots may only contain information about species in the
1784 dominant layer), from use of imagery, or other information that relies primarily on the dominant
1785 species in the dominant canopy layer.

1786 *Status categories of types not formally recognized*

1787 In addition to the three levels of classification confidence, two categories are established
1788 to identify vegetation types that have been described to some extent but which have not been
1789 formally accepted as an NVC unit of vegetation. These categories are:

1790 Proposed: Formally described types that are in some stage of the NVC Peer Review
1791 process, but for which the process is still incomplete. For example, indicating that a type is

1792 “proposed” can be used when investigators may have a need to refer to these types in
1793 publications or reports prior to the completion of the peer review process.

1794 Provisional: Types not yet formally described, but which are expected to be additions to
1795 the existing list of NVC types for an area or project. Provisional types should only be used when
1796 a clear effort is being made to apply the NVC, but where some vegetation does not appear to
1797 have been covered by the concepts of known units for an area or project. For example, a report
1798 or publication may need to submit a list of NVC types and any additional types that have not
1799 been recognized by the NVC, nor have they been more formally submitted for peer review as a
1800 “proposed” type. Such types can be designated as “provisional.”

1801 7.2. PEER-REVIEW PROCESS

1802 The process for submitting and evaluating changes to the classification must be formal,
1803 impartial, open, and scientifically rigorous, yet must be simple, clear, and timely. To facilitate
1804 timely review and efficient use of human resources, templates containing the components
1805 required for compliance with the guidelines in Section 6 should be used for submission of
1806 proposed changes to the NVC.

1807 The Peer Review Board, in conjunction with the NVC partners, is responsible for
1808 ensuring that the criteria specified in the version of “Guidelines for Describing Associations and
1809 Alliances of the U.S. National Vegetation Classification” that is current at the time, are followed.
1810 This Board must adhere to the scientific and technical principles of the NVC and it must ensure
1811 the good order and scientific credibility of the classification. The objectives of the peer review
1812 process are to (a) ensure compliance with classification, nomenclature and documentation
1813 guidelines, (b) maintain reliability of the floristic data and other supporting documentation, and
1814 (c) referee conflicts with established and potential NVC floristic types.

1815 Investigators wishing to contribute to the NVC by proposing changes to the classification
1816 must submit their methods and results to the Peer Review Board as specified in the contemporary
1817 version of this document. Investigators participating in NVC will use a defined template for
1818 type descriptions that can be readily reviewed and, if accepted, easily uploaded into the database
1819 system. Investigators who describe association or alliance types must place their proposed types
1820 within the context of existing NVC types so as to determine whether the type under

1821 consideration is distinct, or whether their data will instead refine or upgrade the definition of a
1822 type or types already on the list.

1823 In order to establish effective peer-review, reviewers should have sufficient regional
1824 expertise to understand how a proposed change to the NVC (i.e., addition, merger, or splits of
1825 associations or alliances) would affect related associations and alliances. Our approach is to use
1826 a set of geographically based review teams. It is the peer-review team's job to (a) ensure
1827 compliance with classification, nomenclature, and documentation guidelines, (b) maintain
1828 reliability of the floristic data and other supporting documentation, and (c) referee conflicts with
1829 established NVC elements. Review methods used internally by these regional teams need to be
1830 compatible with those used by others, and changes to types that could potentially occur in more
1831 than one region will need to be evaluated by all the appropriate teams.

1832 The Peer Review Board will maintain publicly available Proceedings of all official
1833 actions as described in Section 8. Full descriptions of types will constitute the NVC primary
1834 literature and will be published in the Proceedings. The Proceedings will publish official
1835 changes to the list of NVC associations and alliances, and it will include the required supporting
1836 information for all changes made to the list.

1837 Two kinds of peer review are available (Figure 3). If an investigator proposes to describe
1838 a type at the high or moderate confidence level, a *full peer-review process* is required. If the
1839 investigator does not have sufficient information to justify high or moderate confidence, but is
1840 convinced that the type is new to the NVC, he or she can submit the type as a low confidence
1841 type and an *expedited peer-review process* will be used.

1842 Full Peer Review

1843 The review process for proposals to the NVC is overseen by a Review Board appointed
1844 by the ESA Vegetation Panel. The review Board consists of a Review Coordinator, Regional
1845 Coordinators, and other members the Panel may find appropriate. Full peer review is used when:

- 1846 1. the type is thought to be entirely new to the NVC,
- 1847 2. the type is an upgrade in confidence of an existing type without a type concept change, or
- 1848 3. the type is a reworking/replacement of an existing type concept.

1849 The full peer-review process will include a streamlined y web-based process for
1850 submitting type descriptions following procedures, templates, and required data fields (outlined
1851 in Section 6) to the NVC Review Coordinator. If the submission meets the established criteria,

1852 the Review Coordinator will ensure that the submission receives reviews would be solicited from
1853 qualified reviewers. Based on their input, the Coordinator will:

- 1854 1. accept the type(s) as either a high, moderate, or low confidence level,
- 1855 2. return proposal for modification or revision,
- 1856 3. reject the proposal but recommend provisional status for the proposed type, or
- 1857 4. reject the proposal altogether.

1858 As part of the acceptance process, the Regional Coordinator will indicate what effect (if
1859 any) the submission may have on other types in the NVC not addressed by the submission. If an
1860 effect to other types is determined to be significant, the Regional Coordinator either proposes
1861 other updates to related NVC types or requests additional input from the investigator. The
1862 Regional Coordinator will then send the decision and all supporting reviews and documentation
1863 to the Review Coordinator. The Review Coordinator will inform the investigator of the results of
1864 the peer review. If a submission is accepted, the Review Coordinator ensures that the NVC list
1865 and database are updated and that the proposal is posted on the NVC electronic Proceedings.

1866 Expedited Peer Review (low confidence types)

1867 If the investigator does not have sufficient information to support high or moderate
1868 confidence but is convinced that a type is new to the NVC, he or she can submit it as a low
1869 confidence type and an expedited peer-review process will be used. Expedited peer review is
1870 only used when a type is thought to be entirely new to the NVC. As in the full peer review
1871 process, investigators electronically submit type descriptions following the outlined procedures,
1872 templates, and required data fields outlined in Section 6 to the Review Coordinator. The Review
1873 Coordinator (or his/her designee) evaluates the submission to determine whether it meets the
1874 criteria for expedited peer-review of a low confidence type. Provided, it meets those criteria, the
1875 Review Coordinator sends the submission to a Regional Coordinator. The Regional Coordinator
1876 consults as appropriate with regional experts to help assess the validity and acceptability of the
1877 type, and sends a decision and documentation to the Review Coordinator. The Review
1878 Coordinator informs the investigator of the results of the review. If submission is accepted, the
1879 Coordinator ensures that the NVC list and database are updated and that the proposal is posted in
1880 the NVC electronic Proceedings.

1881 **8. DATA ACCESS AND MANAGEMENT**

1882 Data availability and management are central to the organization and implementation of
1883 the National Vegetation Classification. Most issues regarding the organization of the NVC can
1884 be clarified by careful consideration of information flow into, through, and out of the three
1885 constituent databases of NVC: botanical nomenclature, field plots, and classified associations
1886 and alliances,. In effect, information flow defines and holds together the various parts of the
1887 NVC. The overall information required for the NVC enterprise is presented graphically in
1888 Figure 4 and is summarized next.

1889 **8.1 BOTANICAL NOMENCLATURE**

1890 All stages in the NVC process refer to specific plant taxa. Plant taxa used in the NVC
1891 need to be clearly and unambiguously recorded, especially in plot databases and in the
1892 classification database. However, the use of a plant name does not necessarily convey accurate
1893 information on the taxonomic concept employed by the user of that name. Vegetation plots are
1894 intended to include accurate records of taxa present at some time and place as observed by some
1895 investigator. This objective is made complex by the fact that taxonomic standards vary with
1896 time, place, and investigator. When plot data collected at various times and places by various
1897 investigators are combined into a single database the different taxonomic nomenclatures must be
1898 reconciled. The traditional solution has been to agree on a standard list and to map the various
1899 names to that list. For example, within the U.S. there are several related standard lists of plant
1900 taxa including Kartesz (1999), USDA PLANTS (<http://plants.usda.gov/>), and ITIS
1901 (<http://www.itis.usda.gov/index.html>). Each of these is intended to cover the full range of taxa
1902 in the U.S. at their time of publication and each lists synonyms for the taxa recognized.
1903 However, these lists do not allow for effective integration of data sets for several reasons. (1)
1904 The online lists are periodically updated but are not simultaneously archived, with the
1905 consequence that the user cannot reconstruct the database as it was viewed at an arbitrary time in
1906 the past. For this reason users should, at a minimum, cite the date on which the database was
1907 observed. (2) One name can be used for multiple taxonomic concepts, which leads to
1908 irresolvable ambiguities. The standard lists are simply lists and do not define the taxonomic
1909 concepts employed, or how they have changed as the list has been modified. (3) Different

1910 parties have different perspectives on acceptable names and the meaning associated with them.
1911 If one worker uses the Kartesz 1999 list as a standard, that does not necessarily allow others to
1912 merge his or her data with those of a worker who used the USDA PLANTS list as a standard
1913 (also see Section 6.3, Nomenclatural rules).

1914 Much ambiguity arises from the biological nomenclature requirement that when a taxon
1915 is split, the name continues to be applied to the taxon that corresponds to the type specimen for
1916 the original name. Moreover, different authors can interpret taxa in different ways. In short,
1917 plant names can refer to multiple definitions of plant taxa, and a plant taxon can have multiple
1918 names. To avoid ambiguity, plant taxa associated with the NVC must be documented by
1919 reference to both a specific name and a particular use of that name, typically in a published
1920 work. All databases supporting the NVC must track plant types through documentation of such
1921 name-reference couplets. We follow the ideas of both Berendsohn (1995; a “potential taxon”)
1922 and Pyle (2004; an “assertion”) with respect to name-reference couplets. For the purposes of the
1923 NVC we term name-reference couplets a “taxon-concept”. A name-reference combination (a
1924 taxon-concept) provides a label (a name) for a circumscribed taxonomic entity (a concept).
1925 However, any particular label might be synonymous with, or otherwise relate to, one or more
1926 other concepts. Organism identifications (be they occurrences in plots, labels on museum
1927 specimens, or treatments in authoritative works), should be by reference to a concept so as to
1928 allow unambiguous identification of the intended taxonomic object. Identification of the
1929 appropriate concept to attach to an organism does not immediately dictate what name should be
1930 used for that concept. Different parties may have different name usages for a particular accepted
1931 concept.

1932 An example illustrating the need for this approach is the species name *Abies lasiocarpa*
1933 (Hooker) Nuttall. The concept intended for this name by the PLANTS Database (USDA, NRCS
1934 2000) is quite different than the concept intended for the same name by the Flora of North
1935 America (1993+). The taxon-concept *Abies lasiocarpa* (Hooker) Nuttall *sec* Flora of North Am.
1936 Vol. 2 refers to a subset (occurring in the Northwest USA and western British Columbia) of the
1937 broader taxon-concept *Abies lasiocarpa* (Hooker) Nuttall *sec* USDA PLANTS (2000). The
1938 PLANTS Database (USDA, NRCS 2000) taxon-concept includes the taxon-concepts of: (a)
1939 *Abies lasiocarpa* (Hooker) Nuttall *sec* Flora of North Am. Vol. 2, as well as (b) *Abies bifolia* A.
1940 Murray *sec* Flora of North Am. Vol. 2.

1941 By using the name *Abies lasiocarpa* (Hooker) Nuttall without referencing which concept
1942 is intended, it is not possible to know if the name applies to the more general concept (which
1943 includes *Abies bifolia* A. Murray *sec* Flora of North Am. Vol. 2) or the more narrow concept
1944 intended by Flora of North America. Such differences are not trivial and we expect the concepts
1945 of taxa to change substantially in the future. The taxon-concept approach will allow for and
1946 facilitate such changes as knowledge of plant taxonomy expands, yet it will provide for an exact
1947 understanding of the concept intended by the use of any particular taxon name. We follow
1948 Berendsohn (1995) in using the term “*sec*” which means “in the sense of”. The appropriate
1949 writing style for a taxon-concept is: [taxonomic name] *sec* [abbreviated reference].

1950 Unknown or irregular taxa (such as composite morphotypes representing several similar
1951 taxa) should be reported with the name of the taxon for the first level with certain identification
1952 and must be associated with a note field in the database that provides additional information
1953 (e.g., Peet, R.K., plot #4-401, third “unknown grass”, aff. *Festuca*, NCU 777777). For best
1954 practice provide a name field to follow the given taxon in parentheses (e.g., *Potentilla (simplex +*
1955 *canadensis)*, Poaceae (aff. *Festuca*)).

1956 8.2 PLOT DATA ARCHIVES AND DATA EXCHANGE

1957 Field plot data and plot databases are to vegetation types what plant specimens and
1958 herbaria are to plant species types. Vegetation scientists use plots for formal observation and
1959 recording of vegetation in the field. The fundamental unit of vegetation information is the
1960 vegetation plot; without plot data there would be no tangible basis for classification (Section 5).
1961 At a minimum, a plot used for classification or to document a type occurrence contains
1962 information on location, spatial extent, dominant species presence and cover, select
1963 environmental data, and metadata. Investigators must include plot data summaries in their
1964 descriptions of vegetation types (see Section 6).

1965 A plot database system is needed to hold the plot data that form the basis for
1966 documenting, defining, and refining the associations and alliances that constitute the floristic
1967 levels of the NVC. Vegetation plots used in the development or revision of the NVC must be
1968 archived in a permanent publicly accessible database system so that they can be examined and
1969 reinterpreted in light of future research. In addition, plot data used to support description of a
1970 vegetation type must be linked by accession number to the description of the type in the

1971 Vegetation Classification Database and should be publicly available via a direct database query
1972 from a web browser. All such data must conform to the standard data schema shown in
1973 Appendix 4 to facilitate data exchange and analysis. While there is no requirement that the plot
1974 data supporting a proposed or accepted type be archived in VegBank, the ESA Vegetation Panel
1975 maintains VegBank (<http://vegbank.org>) for archiving, access to, and discovery of plot data.
1976 Plot data may be converted to the standard NVC XML Schema (Appendix 4) by entering it into
1977 VegBank, either as singular plot records or as batches of records.

1978 Collection of plot data is a distributed activity external to the NVC per se, driven by the
1979 needs and interests of numerous organizations and individuals. All such organizations and
1980 individuals are encouraged to submit their plot data to a public plot database, either as
1981 components of proposals for changes in the NVC or as separate submissions of basic data. All
1982 uses of plot data with respect to the NVC must cite the original author of the plot.

1983 Plot databases should accommodate user-defined fields so as to be more flexible in the
1984 kinds of data archived, which in turn should encourage greater participation. Similarly,
1985 opportunities should exist for qualified users to annotate plots such as by adding interpretations
1986 of community membership or plant taxon identifications

1987 8.3 COMMUNITY-TYPE DATABASES

1988 The Vegetation Classification Database must be viewable and searchable over the
1989 Internet, and must be regularly updated. The primary access point for viewing the classification
1990 is the NatureServe Explorer website (<http://www.natureserve.org/explorer/>). Although mirrors
1991 of this information may be found at other sites, the NatureServe Explorer release should be
1992 viewed as definitive. One of the advantages of websites is that they can be updated frequently.
1993 When citing an association or alliance, users of the NVC should cite the website and the explicit
1994 version observed (or date observed) so as to allow exact reconstruction of the community
1995 concepts employed and supporting information observed.

1996 Maintenance of NVC data files is the responsibility of the NVC management team. (The
1997 NVC management team will be made up of individuals from the organizations responsible for
1998 the NVC, who directly operate the system. For example, team members from NatureServe will
1999 help maintain the classification database; team members from the ESA will help maintain the
2000 peer review process.) Individuals assigned to this function will be able to modify appropriate

2001 NVC files. Minor changes based on new information, such as an increase in the range of a
2002 community, will be thoroughly documented and inserted without review. However, definition,
2003 redefinition, or change in the confidence level of a vegetation type would require approval of the
2004 peer-review team (see Section 7).

2005 8.4 PROPOSAL SUBMISSION AND THE NVC PROCEEDINGS

2006 Proposals for revisions in the NVC must be submitted in digital format using standard
2007 templates available through links that can be found at VegBank (<http://vegbank.org>) or
2008 NatureServe Explorer (<http://www.natureserve.org/explorer/>). Key components of successful
2009 proposals will be posted on the web as the Proceedings of the NVC and will be accessible
2010 through VegBank and NatureServe Explorer. The Proceedings will constitute the primary
2011 literature underpinning the classification. This literature will be used publicly document and
2012 archive changes to the classification database and it will be permanently and publicly available
2013 as a form of digital journal linked to the classification database.

2014 **9. DEFINITIONS AND GUIDELINES FOR FIELD APPLICATIONS**

2015 The purpose of this section is to make the definitions and guidelines described in the
2016 preceding sections more readily accessible for practitioners. The detail and complexity of those
2017 chapters is necessary for authoritative treatment of associations and alliances description and
2018 classification. However, the detail in those chapters may not be necessary for many users of the
2019 classification. The following sections summarize the NVC definitions and guidelines and
2020 provide direct reference to the detailed information in the preceding sections. The objectives of
2021 these guidelines are to: (1) facilitate and support the development, implementation, and use of a
2022 standardized vegetation classification for the United States; (2) guide professional ecologists in
2023 defining and adopting standards for vegetation sampling and analysis in support of the
2024 classification; and (3) maintain scientific credibility of the classification through peer review.
2025 These guidelines are not meant to preclude alternative classification approaches which may
2026 address different needs. They are intended to facilitate an orderly development of the USNVC
2027 as well as collaboration with other international classification activities.

2028 Following the sequence of the previous sections, the definitions and basic criteria for
2029 associations and alliances are covered first, in Section 9.1. Guidelines for collecting field plot

2030 data are described next, in Section 9.2. Conventions for naming and describing associations and
2031 alliances are provided in Section 9.3. The process for peer review of proposals to change the
2032 names or concepts of alliances and associations is listed in Section 9.4. Finally, the component
2033 databases and the technical structure of the NVC information system are described in Section
2034 9.5. The content of each of these sections is in outline format for practical application and
2035 referencing. Where appropriate, criteria that are minimally essential are indicated in order to
2036 focus attention on the most basic aspects of the work. Appendix 1 lists each type of data used by
2037 the NVC and indicates whether collecting the data is essential or nonessential but the best
2038 practice.

2039 9.1 DEFINITIONS AND CRITERIA FOR FLORISTIC UNITS

2040 Floristic criteria are the primary properties of the vegetation used to define the most basic
2041 units of the classification, the association and alliance. Association and alliance type concepts
2042 should be derived from analysis of field plot data in which the species and their abundance, the
2043 plot location, overall vegetation structure, and habitat setting are described. These field data
2044 provide the fundamental information for the numerical description of specific associations and
2045 alliances. The following paragraphs define the alliance and association terms and explain the
2046 diagnostic criteria. Additional information on the definitions of NVC floristic units can be found
2047 in Section 4 (page 22)

2048 1. *Definitions of the floristic units:*

- 2049 a. Association: A vegetation classification unit defined on the basis of a
2050 characteristic range of species composition, diagnostic species occurrence, habit
2051 conditions and physiognomy.
- 2052 b. Alliance: A vegetation classification unit containing one or more associations,
2053 and defined by a characteristic range of species composition, habitat conditions,
2054 physiognomy, and diagnostic species, typically at least one of which is found in
2055 the uppermost or dominant stratum of the vegetation.

2056 2. *Diagnostics:*

- 2057 a. Diagnostic species exhibit patterns of relative fidelity, constancy or abundance
2058 that differentiate one floristic type from another.
- 2059 b. Diagnostic criteria used to define the association and alliance should be clearly
2060 stated, and the range of variation in composition, habitat, and physiognomy and
2061 structure should be clearly described, including similarity with other related
2062 floristic types

2063 3. *Existing vegetation:*
2064 Associations and alliances are categories of existing, or actual vegetation (i.e., the
2065 plant species present and the vegetation structure found at a given location at the time of
2066 observation).

2067 4. *Classification hierarchy:*
2068 Associations and alliances recognized within the NVC must be defined so as to
2069 nest within categories of the recognized hierarchy (e.g. in FGDC 1997 *et seq.*; see Figure
2070 1).

2071 9.2 COLLECTING FIELD PLOTS

2072 A fundamental goal of the NVC is to have associations and alliances described from
2073 quantitative analysis of field plot data (see Text Box 1 as well as Sections 2 and 5). The
2074 capability to describe associations and alliances from quantitative and repeatable measurements
2075 depends largely on field data that are collected and archived in a consistent manner and are
2076 publicly available. This section provides basic criteria for the types of and formats for
2077 information that should be collected in the field. It addresses: selecting stands of vegetation for
2078 inventory, plot design, recording species composition and site conditions, describing the vertical
2079 structure and physiognomy of a plot, the geographic information required, and the types of
2080 metadata that should be provided by field workers for each plot record. Each of these topics is
2081 covered briefly below. The focus here is on plot information that is complete enough to serve as
2082 *classification plots*; that is, plots which contribute to classification analyses that help define
2083 associations or alliances. Less information is required from plots that are gathered only for the
2084 purpose of documenting the occurrence of a pre-defined alliance or association. These plots are
2085 referred to as *occurrence plots*. Greater detail on each is provided in Section 5 (page 27). All of
2086 the data fields that are both minimally required and optimally desired are listed and defined in
2087 Appendix 1.

2088 1. *Stand selection and plot design:*
2089 A stand of vegetation may be selected for plot sampling by either preferential or
2090 representative means, and the criteria used to select stands should be thoroughly
2091 documented. Each plot should represent one relatively homogeneous stand of vegetation
2092 in the field. A plot must be large enough to represent the stand in terms of total species
2093 composition and abundance. A plot may be either a single large comprehensively
2094 sampled plot, or a set of subsampled areas within a larger plot.

2095 2. *Species composition of the plot:*
2096 The floristic composition of a plot consists of both the identity and the abundance
2097 of the genera, species, and lower taxa. The actual identity of a plant taxon can be

2098 somewhat complicated since it consists of (a) a name, and (b) an entity concept. The
2099 coupling of an a name with entity concept is termed a “taxon-concept” (see Section 8.1,
2100 page 64, for more details on a taxon-concepts). The next sections provide the minimal
2101 guidelines for recording species occurrences, determining canopy cover as a measure of
2102 species abundance, and estimating the distribution of plant species by strata.

2103 a. For vegetation classification plots, sampling should be designed to detect and
2104 record the complete assemblage of vascular plant species in the stand.
2105 Recording of nonvascular species is expected in vegetation where nonvascular
2106 species are dominant. Only one field visit at an optimal time of year is required,
2107 though additional visits can improve plot quality and are recommended for
2108 vegetation types with marked phenological variation.

2109 b. For classification plots, cover is the required measure of species abundance.
2110 Measurement of canopy cover, as opposed to foliar cover, is recommended. If
2111 cover values are in discrete categories rather than continuous, the cover scales
2112 should be able to nest within the Braun-Blanquet cover-abundance scale classes
2113 of: “r” (solitary individual with small cover), “+” (few individuals with small
2114 cover), 0-5%, 5-25%, 25-50%, 50-75%, and 75-100% (Table 4). For occurrence
2115 plots, the minimum requirements are: names of the dominant taxa, their cover
2116 values (or another suitable measure of abundance), geographic coordinates, date
2117 of observation, name of the association or alliance observed, and name(s) of those
2118 who made the observation.

2119 c. Although not required for classification plots, the best practice is for each species
2120 listed in a plot to be assigned to each of the strata in which it is found (tree, shrub,
2121 herb, moss, floating, submerged), with a separate cover estimate for its abundance
2122 in each of these strata. (For example, where subalpine fir plants that are seedlings
2123 cover 25% of a plot, they would be recorded as part of the herb stratum in
2124 addition to part of the overall cover of all subalpine fir plants in the plot
2125 regardless of stratum.) At a minimum, total cover of a species in the plot is
2126 required, though this may be calculated based on the stratum cover values.
2127 Epiphytes and lianas may be treated in the strata in which they occur, or treated as
2128 separate “strata.”

2129 d. The minimum requirements for taxon composition are:

2130 i. A plant name and plant reference (a taxon-concept, see page 64);

2131 ii. Taxon cover (and taxon stratum cover, if strata are used), with cover
2132 estimated to at least the accuracy of the Braun-Blanquet scale (Table 4).

2133 iii. The term species is used here to indicate the fundamental orientation of
2134 the plot sampling approach – that of a species-based approach. But it may
2135 include species or subspecies, or, if it is not possible to recognize these in
2136 the field at the time of sampling, it may include either higher units such as
2137 genera or family, or ad hoc units (i.e., “Carex fuzzy red base”).

2138 3. *Vertical structure and physiognomy of the plot:*

2139 While not required, it is the best practice to describe the structure and
2140 physiognomy of vegetation by recording the canopy cover of a core set of vegetation
2141 strata: tree, shrub, herb, moss, floating, and submerged strata as defined on page 41 (also
2142 see Figure 2). Subcategories of these strata (e.g., canopy tree and subcanopy tree, tall
2143 shrub and short shrub) can be used, but these should always nest within rather than span
2144 multiple standard strata. Canopy cover of each of the NVC stratum types may be derived
2145 from composites of other classifications, such as from growth forms (see the method for
2146 converting data for this purpose on page 43 as well as Tables 1 and 2). If strata are
2147 characterized, the following rules should be followed:

- 2148 a. Plants are assigned to a stratum based on their predominant position or height in
2149 the stand, and secondarily by their growth form or growth form stage.
2150 Consequently, a tree *species* that has both seedlings and saplings in a plot could
2151 be listed in several strata. However, an *individual* plant may be assigned only to
2152 one stratum, which is the stratum in which the majority of its leaf area occurs.
- 2153 b. Provide the prevailing height of the top and the base of each stratum.
- 2154 c. The cover of the stratum is the total vertical projection of the canopy cover of all
2155 species collectively on the ground, not the sum of the individual covers of all
2156 species in the stratum. The total cover of the stratum will, therefore, never exceed
2157 100% (whereas, adding up the individual cover of species within the stratum
2158 could well exceed 100% since species may overlap in their cover).
- 2159 d. The percent cover of at least the three most abundant growth forms in the
2160 dominant or uppermost stratum should also be estimated (see Table 3 for a list of
2161 growth forms).
- 2162 e. Epiphytes and lianas are handled in different ways by various field protocols.
2163 When treated as individual species for cover assessment, they may be treated as a
2164 special growth form-stratum, independent of the strata mentioned above, or they
2165 may be assigned to the standard strata on the basis of the location of their
2166 predominant canopy cover. Bryophytes (including liverworts) and lichens
2167 growing on the same substrate as vascular plants are treated as part of the
2168 nonvascular strata. When assessing total cover of the primary strata, an epiphyte
2169 or liana should be included in the primary stratum where it has its predominant
2170 canopy cover.
- 2171 f. The field stratum (sometimes called herb stratum) includes all woody or
2172 semiwoody plants or creeping vines where these overlap in height. This is a
2173 compromise between strata based strictly on height versus growth form. More
2174 specific distinctions of growth form (forbs, grasses, dwarf-shrubs) composition
2175 within this stratum can either be recognized directly in the field or can be
2176 estimated after the fact by assigning species within a stratum to a growth form
2177 category and calculating an approximate percent cover of the growth form.
- 2178 g. The ground stratum (sometimes called nonvascular, bryoid, or moss stratum) is
2179 reserved strictly for cryptogams (mosses, lichens, liverworts, algae and bacteria),
2180 even where herbs or woody plants may be reduced to very short heights.

2181 4. *Physical data of the plot:*

2182 The physical variables relevant to any interpretation of plot data vary widely
2183 across the range of vegetation types. It is, therefore, difficult to require any absolute
2184 minimum set of specific environmental criteria. Rather, we provide a set of
2185 environmental variables that should be given serious consideration in any vegetation
2186 survey, most especially for classification plots. In addition, the vegetation plots database
2187 and vegetation classification database provide recommended fields for collecting
2188 environmental data and these should be consulted. More detailed information is provided
2189 in the section on environmental data (Section 5, page 44), Table 1.4 of Appendix 1, and
2190 Appendix 2. The following site variables should be considered:

- 2191 a. Physical features of the stand should be described, including elevation (in m),
2192 slope aspect (in azimuth degrees of 0 to 360), and slope gradient (in degrees or
2193 percent), topographic position, landform, and geologic parent material (see
2194 Appendix 2 for constrained vocabularies for landform and geologic material).
- 2195 b. Soil and water features, including soil moisture, drainage, hydrology, depth of
2196 water, and water salinity (where appropriate), should be measured or estimated.
- 2197 c. The soil surface should be characterized in terms of the percent cover of litter,
2198 rock, bare ground, coarse woody debris, live vascular stem, nonvascular species
2199 on the soil surface, surface water, or other important surface features.
- 2200 d. Site conditions should be described, including landscape context, homogeneity of
2201 the vegetation, phenological phase at the time of observation, stand maturity,
2202 successional status, and evidence of disturbance.

2203 5. *Geographic data for plots:*

2204 Information on the location of a plot is vitally important and should be carefully
2205 recorded in a standard format. For historical, or “legacy”, data where the geographic
2206 information may have been recorded in different formats and measurements, the original
2207 information must be preserved and the methods used to transform this information should
2208 be described and reproducible. Additional details can be found in Table 1.3 of Appendix
2209 1 as well as in the section on geographic data (Section 5, page 44). The following
2210 guidelines should be followed when recording geographic information for field plots:

- 2211 a. Latitude and longitude in decimal degrees and WGS 84 (NAD83) datum.
- 2212 b. The coordinates that were collected in the field and the datum used. If a
2213 nonstandard projection was used, then the projection name, spatial units (decimal
2214 degrees, meters, etc.), size of the spheroid, central meridian, latitude of
2215 projection's origin, and any other vital parameters such as false easting and false
2216 northing.
- 2217 c. Description of the method used to determine the plot location (e.g., estimated
2218 from a USGS 7.5 minute quadrangle, GPS, etc.).
- 2219 d. An estimate of the accuracy of the plot's location information in the form of the
2220 radius in meters for a 95% certainty.
- 2221 e. Narrative information useful for plot relocation.

- 2222 f. The minimum requirements for geographic data are:
- 2223 i. Latitude and longitude in decimal degrees and WGS 84 (NAD83) datum
- 2224 and an estimate of the precision of these coordinates in meters.
- 2225 ii. The method used to determine latitude and longitude. For example: (a)
- 2226 collected in the field with a geographic positioning system (this should
- 2227 include the datum used, or specify if a nonstandard projection) or (b)
- 2228 through a narrative that describes how the plot location was determined,
- 2229 including a precision estimate, and the means of locating the plot centroid
- 2230 (e.g., the plot location was estimated from the USGS Assateague Park 7.5'
- 2231 map quadrangle; the centroid for locating the plot is the geographic center
- 2232 of Assateague Park).

2233 6. *Metadata for plots:*

2234 Careful attention to recording metadata for each plot record is essential to

2235 maximizing the long term utility of the record. Because many type descriptions will

2236 necessarily be derived from a variety of plot sources, it is the plot metadata that facilitate

2237 searching for and identifying useful records. All plots should have a project name and

2238 description associated with them, the methods used to select and lay out the plots, the

2239 level of effort expended in gathering floristic data, cover scale and strata types used, and

2240 the name and contact information of the lead field investigators. See Tables 2.1 – 2.6 of

2241 Appendix 1 for detailed criteria as well as the section on metadata on page 45. The

2242 minimum requirements are:

- 2243 a. An author plot code.
- 2244 b. An author observation code (if there are multiple observations of a plot over
- 2245 time).
- 2246 c. Observation date and date accuracy.
- 2247 d. Lead field investigator's name, role, and address.
- 2248 e. Plot selection approach.
- 2249 f. Plot characteristics including:
- 2250 i. Plot area in m².
- 2251 ii. Plot type, indicating if vegetation data were recorded in the entire plot or
- 2252 using subplots in a specified configuration.
- 2253 iii. If subplots are used then specify the species (taxon) observation area in
- 2254 terms of size and total area of subplots (e.g., a plot may be 100 m², but if
- 2255 10 1 m² subplots are used then the taxon observation area is 10 m²).
- 2256 iv. Cover dispersion (if subplots are used, how they are distributed).
- 2257 g. Vegetation layer (strata) methods, if any.
- 2258 h. Description of cover method for species composition.

2259 9.3. CLASSIFYING AND DESCRIBING ASSOCIATIONS AND ALLIANCES

2260 The most fundamental unit of information for describing and classifying associations and
2261 alliances is the field plot. The description of a vegetation type is a synthesis of data from many
2262 plots through what is termed here “classification analysis.” This section summarizes the
2263 essential steps needed for data preparation, classification analysis, and interpretation of a
2264 proposed association or alliance, naming conventions for new types, and criteria for describing
2265 types. Complete details on classifying and describing associations and alliances are provided in
2266 Section 6 (page34).

2267 1. *Data preparation:*

2268 When preparing plot data for classification analysis one should:

- 2269 a. Ensure that the plots used sufficiently sample the expected geographic and
2270 environmental range of the type.
- 2271 b. Ensure that the plots represent the expected compositional, physiognomic, and
2272 site variation of the type of interest.
- 2273 c. Ensure a unique and standardized identity for each taxon-concept (see especially
2274 Section 8.1 on botanical nomenclature on page 64).
- 2275 d. Document possible data limitations, such as insufficient geographic extent of
2276 sampling, or inadequate sampling of variation within the type.

2277 2. *Classification analysis and interpretation:*

2278 A variety of statistical methods are available for classification analysis, including
2279 direct gradient analysis, ordination, and clustering. No single methodological formula is
2280 suitable for all possible analyses. It is therefore incumbent on those proposing new or
2281 modified types to apply contemporary methods of vegetation science for implementing a
2282 sound statistical approach, and to explain clearly the rationale for the approach used. The
2283 general components of a classification analysis are:

- 2284 a. The plots records used must be clearly referenced and accessible by others (see
2285 Section 8 and the section on classification analysis on page 47).
- 2286 b. An outlier analysis of the initial set of plots should be provided and the criteria
2287 used for identification and elimination of plot records should be provided.
- 2288 c. Show that there is sufficient redundancy in plot composition to identify a
2289 threshold of significant pattern in compositional variation. That is, that the data
2290 set has the statistical power needed to be convincing. One example would be to
2291 explore a null hypothesis that a given collection of plots is more self-similar than
2292 would be expected of a random collection of plots.
- 2293 d. An exact description of the analysis procedure should be provided, including
2294 careful documentation of assumptions and limitations of the data, methods of
2295 dimensional reduction, and value transformations.

- 2296 e. Results should be presented in tabular and graphical formats as well as narrative.
2297 f. Criteria used to identify diagnostic species, such as constancy and fidelity should
2298 be specified.
2299 g. A tabular summary of diagnostic and constant species should be provided (see
2300 Tables 4, 6, and 7).

2301 3. *Description of association and alliances:*

2302 Formal description of an association or alliance requires that each of the
2303 following items be addressed. These are discussed in detail in Section 6.2 (page 51).
2304 The topical sections that are required for describing vegetation types are also shown in
2305 Text Box 2 and a worked example is provided in Appendix 3.

- 2306 a. Name. Develop a scientific name for the floristic type using the nomenclatural
2307 standards in the above section.
- 2308 b. Floristic unit. A description should indicate whether the vegetation type being
2309 described is an association or an alliance. For planted or cultivated types indicate
2310 “Planted/Cultivated.”
- 2311 c. Classification placement. Indicate the full name of the alliance or formation
2312 under which the type should be placed. The FGDC and NatureServe will provide
2313 the current list of accepted alliances and formations. One source for the NVC
2314 database of vegetation types is <http://www.natureserve.org/explorer>.
- 2315 d. Classification comments. Describe any classification issues relating to the
2316 definition or concept of the type. Any assessment of the proposed type’s natural
2317 or seminatural status should be clearly identified.
- 2318 e. Rationale for choosing the nominal taxa (the species by which the type is named).
2319 Explain the choice of nominal species; for example, whether or not they are
2320 dominant, or if they are indicative of distinctive conditions such as alkaline soils,
2321 elevation, geographic region, etc.
- 2322 f. Summary. Provide a 1-paragraph summary of the structure, composition,
2323 environmental setting, and geographic range of the type. This paragraph
2324 summarizes information from items g through k below. The summary should
2325 start with a sentence or two that provide an overall concept of the type.
- 2326 g. Floristics. Species composition and average cover for all species (preferably by
2327 stratum) should be provided in the following summary form:
- 2328 i. A stand table of floristic composition (preferably by stratum) showing
2329 constancy and mean cover (and preferably the range of species cover
2330 values). All species should be listed that have more than 20% constancy
2331 (Tables 6, 7).
- 2332 ii. A summary of diagnostic species, through a tabular arrangement, synoptic
2333 table, or other means of identifying and displaying constant and diagnostic
2334 species. Constant species are those occurring in > 60% (i.e. Table 7
2335 constancy classes IV, V) of the field plots used to define a type.

- 2336 iii. Taxonomic usage in floristic tables must include reference to a taxonomic
2337 standard so as to define the meaning associated with a name. Reference to
2338 and consistency with the current version of USDA PLANTS or IT IS,
2339 coupled with the specific date of observation of the site, is sufficient.
- 2340 iv. Compositional variability of the type across the range of its classification
2341 plots. A discussion of possible subassociations or variants may be useful,
2342 especially for future refinement of type concepts.
- 2343 h. Physiognomy. Provide the following summary information for the plots:
- 2344 i. The physiognomy, structure, and dominant species, including an
2345 assessment of the physiognomic variability of the type.
- 2346 ii. Complete a summary table (Table 5) incorporating each stratum present
2347 (tree, shrub, herb, nonvascular, floating, submerged).
- 2348 i. Dynamics. Provide a summary of the successional status of the type and the
2349 disturbance factors that influence stability and within plot variation for the type.
2350 Describe the extent to which this information is known and the limitations and
2351 assumptions of the assessment.
- 2352 j. Environmental description. Provide a detailed description of important factors
2353 such as elevation (in meters), landscape context, slope aspect, slope gradient,
2354 geology, soils, hydrology, and any other environmental factors thought to be
2355 determinants of the biological composition or structure of the type.
- 2356 k. Description of the range. Provide a brief textual description (not a list of places)
2357 of the total range (present and historic) of the type. List national and subnational
2358 (states or provinces) jurisdictions of occurrence across the entire range of the
2359 type. Distinguish between areas where the type: (a) definitely occurs; (b)
2360 probably or potentially occurs; and (c) is believed to have historically occurred.
2361 It is recommended that subnational administrative units such as states, provinces,
2362 or counties be used for this purpose.
- 2363 l. Identify field plots. Identify plots used to define the type and indicate where the
2364 plot data are archived and the associated accession numbers. All plot records
2365 used must conform to the minimum standards for classification plots described in
2366 Section 5 and be deposited in a publicly accessible archive that itself meets the
2367 standards described in Section 8. Identify any observation plots that may have
2368 been used to help describe the geographic range or other characteristics of the
2369 type.
- 2370 m. Evaluate plot data. Describe all factors that affect plot data adequacy and quality,
2371 including such factors as incomplete sampling throughout the range or poor
2372 floristic quality of plots.
- 2373 n. The number and size of plots. Justify the number of and sizes of plots used in
2374 terms of the floristic variability and geographic distribution.
- 2375 o. Methods used to analyze field data. Discuss the analytical methods used by the
2376 author of the type description to define the types. Include software citations.

- 2377 p. Overall confidence level for the type. Recommend a level of confidence of high,
2378 moderate, or low, based on criteria described in Section 7. The peer-review
2379 process will ultimately establish the formal confidence level (see Section 7) for a
2380 given type.
- 2381 q. Citations. Provide complete citations for all references used in the above section.
- 2382 r. Vegetation type synonymy. List any names already in use in the NVC or other
2383 classifications to describe this or closely related types, either in whole or in part.
2384 Where possible, include comments or explanations on the relatedness of the type
2385 to other types that are adjacent in the classification. For example, is a type listed
2386 as being synonymous, broader in concept, more narrow, or equal to the type
2387 concept being proposed?
- 2388 4. *Nomenclature of associations and alliances:*
- 2389 The nomenclature of associations and alliances is not to be confused with the
2390 nomenclature of taxa, even though species names are used in the names of associations
2391 and alliances. A full discussion of the rules that follow is provided in Section 6.3 (page
2392 54).
- 2393 a. Community nomenclature must contain both scientific and common names, e.g.,
2394 *Pinus taeda - Quercus (alba, falcata, stellata)* Forest Alliance as well as Loblolly
2395 Pine - (White Oak, Southern Red Oak, Post Oak) Forest Alliance. It is desirable
2396 that common names be provided in English, French, and Spanish if translation
2397 names exist. For associations, it may also include a colloquial name, e.g., Ozark
2398 Dolomite Glade. The relevant dominant and diagnostic species that are useful in
2399 naming a type should be selected from the tabular summaries of the types.
2400 Dominant and diagnostic species should include at least one from the dominant
2401 stratum of the type.
- 2402 b. Nomenclature for vascular plant taxa used in scientific type names must follow
2403 the current version of USDA PLANTS or ITIS. Every plant taxa used in a
2404 scientific name will have a unique common name that will form the basis for the
2405 common name of the type.
- 2406 c. For alliances, taxa from secondary strata should be used sparingly.
- 2407 d. Among the taxa that are chosen to name the type, those occurring in the same
2408 stratum (tree, shrub, herb, nonvascular, floating, submerged) are separated by a
2409 hyphen (-), and those occurring in different strata are separated by a slash (/).
2410 Taxa occurring in the uppermost stratum are listed first, followed successively by
2411 those in lower strata.
- 2412 e. Within a single stratum, the order of taxon names generally reflects decreasing
2413 levels of dominance, constancy, or other measures of diagnostic value based on
2414 character or differential value.
- 2415 f. Association or alliance names include as a descriptor the FGDC (1997)
2416 physiognomic class in which they are placed. For alliances, the term “alliance” is
2417 included in the name to distinguish these units from association units (e.g., *Pinus*
2418 *ponderosa* Forest Alliance).

- 2419 g. In cases where diagnostic taxa are unknown or in question, a more general term is
2420 currently allowed as a “placeholder” (e.g., *Cephalanthus occidentalis* / *Carex* spp.
2421 Northern Shrubland). Associations and alliances with placeholders in the name
2422 cannot be considered of high or moderate confidence (Section 7.1) since the
2423 diagnostic taxa of these higher confidence types are known and should be used to
2424 name the type. Furthermore, for reasons of standardization and brevity, the use of
2425 placeholders should be kept to a minimum.
- 2426 h. The least possible number of taxa is used in a name. Although, up to five species
2427 may be necessary to define associations in some regions that contain very diverse
2428 vegetation with relatively even dominance and variable total composition. For
2429 alliances, no more than three species may be used. The scientific names for
2430 associations and alliances must be comprised of a unique set of plant species
2431 names, regardless of the order in which the plant names are used. For example,
2432 neither of the two names:
2433 *Picea mariana* – *Larix laricina* / *Chamaedaphne calculata* Forest
2434 *Larix laricina* – *Picea mariana* / *Chamaedaphne calculata* Forest
2435 are acceptable as labels for two different associations since each one does not
2436 contain a unique set of plant species names.
- 2437 i. The nomenclature for planted and cultivated types follows the same rules as
2438 above, except that the term “alliance” will not be used in the name; rather the
2439 name will be pluralized. Nor is the physiognomic class name required; rather, it
2440 is recommended that a useful descriptor of the vegetation type be used. Examples
2441 of such names include “*Pinus ponderosa* Plantation Forests” at the level of
2442 alliance, or “*Pinus ponderosa* Rocky Mountain Plantation Forest,” and “*Zea mays*
2443 Crop Field” at the level of association.

2444 9.4 PEER REVIEW OF PROPOSED VEGETATION TYPES

2445 Peer review of proposals for new vegetation types, as well as for changes proposed to
2446 type concepts that are already recognized, is essential to the long term utility and progressive
2447 development of the NVC. While we have fixed the conceptual basis for associations and
2448 alliances, the data model continues to be somewhat variable. For example, environmental values
2449 may or may not be included directly in the statistical transformations. Even more, a number of
2450 quite different statistical models may be used in the classification analysis, and it is incumbent
2451 on those proposing new types to make a convincing case based on a clear explanation of the
2452 data, methods, and results. A unified classification of plant communities for a continent such as
2453 North America can only be viable if peer review of proposed types is an integral part of it. The
2454 essential components of a peer review system for the NVC are summarized below and detailed
2455 discussion of each component is provided in Section 7 (page 59).

- 2456 4. *Rationale:*
2457 Floristic types will be established through an authoritative peer review process.
2458 An authoritative process is necessary to maintain the consistency, credibility, orderly
2459 change, and rigor of the classification.
- 2460 5. *Classification confidence:*
2461 Each type will be assigned one of the confidence level shown below (and
2462 discussed in Section 7.1) based on the relative rigor of the data and the analysis used to
2463 identify, define, and describe the type:
- 2464 a. High: Classification is based on quantitative analysis of verifiable, high-quality
2465 classification plots that are published in full or are archived in a publicly
2466 accessible database. Classification plots must meet the minimum requirements
2467 specified in Section 5 and as shown in Appendix 1. High quality classification
2468 plots must represent the known geographic distribution and habitat range of the
2469 type. In addition, plots that form the basis for closely related types must be
2470 compared. For an alliance, the majority of component associations must have a
2471 high to moderate level of confidence.
- 2472 b. Moderate: Classification is lacking in either geographic scope or degree of
2473 quantitative characterization and subsequent comparison with related types, but
2474 otherwise meets the requirements for a high level of confidence. For an alliance,
2475 many associations within the type may have a moderate to low level of
2476 classification confidence.
- 2477 c. Low: Classification is based on plot data that are incomplete, not accessible to
2478 others, or not published; or, based on qualitative analysis, anecdotal information,
2479 or community descriptions that are not accompanied by plot data. Local experts
2480 have often identified these types. Although there is a high level of confidence
2481 that they represent significant vegetation entities that should be incorporated in
2482 the NVC, it is not known whether they would meet the guidelines for floristic
2483 types in concept or in the NVC classification approach if data were available.
2484 Alliances are classified as low confidence if defined primarily from:
- 2485 i. incomplete or unpublished and inaccessible plot data (e.g., plots may only
2486 contain information about species in the dominant layer),
- 2487 ii. non-standard, anecdotal, or local vegetation types, or
- 2488 iii. imagery, or other information that relies primarily on the dominant species
2489 in the dominant canopy layer.
- 2490 6. *Peer review process:*
2491 a. The objectives of the peer review process are to:
- 2492 i. ensure compliance with classification, nomenclature and documentation
2493 guidelines,
- 2494 ii. maintain reliability of the floristic data and other supporting
2495 documentation, and
- 2496 iii. referee conflicts with established and potential NVC floristic types.

- 2497
2498
2499
- b. The peer review process will be administered by the NVC Peer Review Board under the aegis of an institution capable of providing independent and disinterested reviewers of appropriate training and experience.
- 2500
2501
2502
2503
2504
- c. The Peer Review Board is responsible for ensuring that the criteria specified in the version of “Guidelines for Describing Associations and Alliances of the U.S. National Vegetation Classification” that is current at the time, are followed. This Board must adhere to the scientific and technical principles of the NVC and it must ensure the good order and scientific credibility of the classification.
- 2505
2506
2507
2508
- d. Investigators wishing to contribute to the NVC by proposing changes to the classification must submit their methods and results to the Peer Review Board as specified in the version of “Guidelines for Describing Associations and Alliances of the U.S. National Vegetation Classification” which is current at the time.
- 2509
2510
2511
2512
2513
- e. The Peer Review Board will maintain publicly available Proceedings of all official actions. Full descriptions of types will constitute the NVC primary literature and will be published in the Proceedings. The Proceedings will publish official changes to the list of NVC associations and alliances, and it will include the required supporting information for all changes made to the list.
- 2514
2515
- f. Reviewers should have sufficient regional expertise to understand how a given proposed change to the NVC would affect related associations and alliances.
- 2516
2517
2518
- g. Investigators participating in NVC will use a defined template for type descriptions that can be readily reviewed and, if accepted, easily uploaded into the database system.
- 2519
2520
2521
2522
- h. Investigators who describe association or alliance types must place their proposed types within the context of existing NVC types so as to determine whether the type under consideration is distinct, or whether their data will instead refine or upgrade the definition of a type or types already on the list.
- 2523
- i. Two kinds of peer review are available.
- 2524
2525
2526
- i. Full Peer Review: If an investigator proposes to describe a type at the high or moderate confidence level, a full peer-review process is required. Full peer review is used when;
- 2527
2528
2529
1. the type is thought to be entirely new to the NVC,
2. the type is an upgrade in confidence of an existing type without a type concept change, or
- 2530
2531
3. the type is a reworking/replacement of an existing type concept.
- 2532
2533
2534
2535
2536
- ii. Expedited Peer Review: If the investigator does not have sufficient information to support high or moderate confidence but is convinced that the type is new to the NVC, he or she can submit the type as a Low confidence type, and an expedited peer-review process will be used. Thus expedited peer review is only used when a type is thought to be entirely new to the NVC.

- 2537 j. The peer review process should occur in a reasonable time frame, and should
2538 balance the need for improvement to the quality and to the stability of the NVC.

2539 9.5. MANAGEMENT OF VEGETATION DATA

2540 The unified vegetation classification described in these sections cannot succeed without
2541 careful and explicit rules for data management. The classification hinges on the three dynamic
2542 and interacting databases of (a) botanical taxonomy and nomenclature, (b) vegetation field plots,
2543 and (c) classified alliance and associations. It is the synthesis of these databases that will
2544 provide a consistent working knowledge of the vegetation of North America. To be the viable
2545 and stable resource envisioned here, a NVC management team must be identified and
2546 empowered to maintain the NVC process and its information system. The minimum
2547 requirements for ensuring the integrity of NVC data are outlined in the sections that follow, and
2548 details are provided in Section 8 (page 64).

2549 1. *Information components:*

2550 The main information components of the NVC floristic levels are separate
2551 standard databases of:

- 2552 a. botanical taxonomy and nomenclature (the “Taxonomic Database”).
2553 b. vegetation field plots (the “Plots” database).
2554 c. classified alliances and associations (the “Vegetation Classification
2555 Database”).

2556 2. *Web access:*

- 2557 a. Each of these databases must be publicly viewable and searchable over the
2558 web, and must be regularly updated.
2559 b. There must be a primary access point for viewing and retrieving information
2560 from these databases over the web. Although mirrors of this information may
2561 be established at other sites, the primary access point will be the definitive
2562 source of information on taxonomy and nomenclature, field plots, and
2563 recognized alliances and associations, respectively.
2564 c. The website will contain an explicit date and version, so that users of the
2565 NVC can cite the website and the explicit version observed (or date observed)
2566 so as to allow exact reconstruction of the taxonomic and community concepts
2567 employed as well as the observation data provided from field plots.

2568 3. *Component databases:*

2569 a. The Taxonomic Database

- 2570 i. Each taxon must be reported as a name-and-reference couplet known
2571 as a “taxon-concept”. For example, if the plot author based all the

2572 taxa on Fernald (1950), then the names of each taxon would each be
2573 linked to Fernald (1950). If USDA PLANTS or ITIS was used, then
2574 an observation date for these sources must be also provided so that
2575 their exact version can be determined. All databases supporting the
2576 NVC must track plant types by using taxon-concepts. An example of
2577 a taxon-concept is “*Abies lasiocarpa* (Hooker) Nuttall *sec* Flora of
2578 North Am. Vol. 2”, where the name *Abies lasiocarpa* (Hooker) Nuttall
2579 refers explicitly to the concept described in the Flora of North
2580 America Vol. 2. The term “*sec*” means “in the sense of” (see the
2581 section on botanical nomenclature on page 64).

2582 ii. Unknown or irregular taxa (such as composite morphotypes
2583 representing several similar taxa) should be reported with the name of
2584 the taxon for the lowest taxonomic level with certain identification,
2585 and must be associated with a note field in the database that provides
2586 additional information (e.g., Peet, R.K., plot #4-401, third “unknown
2587 grass”, aff. *Festuca*, NCU 777777). For best practice, provide a name
2588 field to follow the given taxon in parentheses (e.g., *Potentilla (simplex*
2589 *+ canadensis)*, Poaceae (aff. *Festuca*)).

2590 b. The Plots Database

2591 i. Plot data used to support changes in the NVC must be archived in a
2592 publicly accessible and searchable database such as VegBank.

2593 ii. Plot data used to support description of a vegetation type
2594 (classification plots) must be linked by accession number to the
2595 description of the type in the Vegetation Classification Database and
2596 should be publicly available via a direct database query from a web
2597 browser. All uses of plot data with respect to the NVC must cite the
2598 original author of the plot.

2599 iii. The Plots Database must support concept-based species (taxon)
2600 taxonomy (see Section 8.1, and Table 1.2 of Appendix 1).

2601 iv. All databases used to archive plot data supporting the NVC must have
2602 assured data permanency and must be able to export plot data in a
2603 format consistent with the Field Plot Data Exchange Schema
2604 (Appendix 4).

2605 c. The Vegetation Classification Database

2606 i. The management team will be able to make minor changes to
2607 Vegetation Classification Database files based on new information,
2608 such as an increase in the range of a community. Such minor changes
2609 will be inserted without review only after proper documentation is
2610 completed.

2611 ii. Definition, redefinition, or change in the confidence level of a
2612 vegetation type requires approval and documentation from the NVC
2613 Peer Review Board.

- 2614 iii. The Vegetation Classification Database will contain a schema that
2615 includes the fields needed for a type description (Section 6, also see
2616 the fields required for classification plots in Appendix 1).
- 2617 iv. The Vegetation Classification Database must support concept-based
2618 species (taxon) taxonomy (see Section 8.1, Table 1.2 of Appendix 1).

2619 4. *Proposal format:*

2620 Proposals for revisions in the NVC must be submitted in digital format using
2621 standard templates available from primary access points for the NVC and its Plots and
2622 Classification databases.

2623 5. *Publication:*

2624 Successful proposals for recognized associations and alliances will be published
2625 in the Proceedings of the NVC and will be accessible at the primary access point for the
2626 Vegetation Classification Database. The Proceedings will be the end product of the
2627 classification, constituting the primary literature underpinning the NVC. It will be
2628 permanently and publicly available as a peer reviewed digital journal linked directly to
2629 the Vegetation Classification Database. The Proceedings of the NVC will seek to serve
2630 the needs of the community of vegetation classification scientists and users.

2631

2632 **LOOKING AHEAD**

2633 **10. INTERNATIONAL COLLABORATION, PROSPECTS AND**
2634 **DIRECTIONS**

2635 10.1 INTERNATIONAL COLLABORATION

2636 Vegetation does not recognize political boundaries and the classification of vegetation is
2637 most effective if undertaken as an international collaboration. The US National Vegetation
2638 Classification developed as one national component of a larger, international initiative, the
2639 International Vegetation Classification (IVC). Accordingly, the guidelines presented in this
2640 document are designed with the expectation that they are consistent with the needs of the greater
2641 IVC enterprise and that a unified set of such guidelines will be adopted by all IVC partners.

2642 Application of these guidelines toward the improvement of the IVC must be understood
2643 as a continuing process. Five critical elements of this process are: (a) collection and
2644 incorporation of new data, (b) evaluation and incorporation of new methods for analysis and
2645 synthesis, (c) publication of new and revised vegetation types, (d) new applications of present

2646 knowledge about vegetation, and (e) integration of national classification activities into a single,
2647 consistent IVC. The ESA Panel encourages international collaboration in the future
2648 development and implementation of these guidelines.

2649 10.2 BUILDING THE CLASSIFICATION CONSORTIUM FOR THE FUTURE

2650 Development and implementation of the IVC as a viable scientific activity depends on
2651 the support and participation of scientists and their institutions. A consortium for the
2652 advancement of the NVC had developed in the US, formalized by a Memorandum of
2653 Understanding (see Section 1, Rationale). Future activities of these and other partners will
2654 include revisions to the guidelines described here, provision of open access to databases
2655 containing the supporting information for classification, and maintenance of a review process for
2656 changes in the floristic units of the classification. Within this initial framework, the FGDC
2657 represents the needs of US federal agencies, and it will coordinate testing and evaluation of the
2658 classification by these agencies. NatureServe uses its long-term experience with the
2659 development and management of the National Vegetation Classification to ensure a practical
2660 continuity in classification applications, as well representing the network of natural heritage
2661 programs and conservation data centers in provinces, states and countries throughout the
2662 Americas. The ESA represents the professional scientific community. Its long experience with
2663 publication and independent peer review ensures the credibility of the classification. The ESA
2664 Panel provides an objective, neutral arena for all interested parties in the evaluation of proposed
2665 changes to these guidelines as well as the recognized classification units.

2666 International development and application of the IVC requires collaboration among
2667 national programs. Like the US-NVC, the Canadian National Vegetation Classification (C-
2668 NVC) uses the general approach of the IVC (Ponomarenko and Alvo 2000). In particular, The
2669 Canadian Forest Service is working closely with provincial governments, Conservation Data
2670 Centers (CDCs, which are also member programs within the Natural Heritage Network
2671 supported by NatureServe), and other federal agencies and organizations to define forest and
2672 woodland types consistent with the association concept used in these guidelines. In addition,
2673 individual provinces have conducted extensive surveys using standardized plots, and they either
2674 have well-established vegetation classifications or are in the process of building them. Some
2675 have already develop alliance and associations units using the same standards, nomenclature and

2676 codes for types used in the U.S. and developing additional names and codes for new types
2677 (Greenall 1996). This approach ensures that associations developed in the U.S. and in Canada
2678 have the potential to be integrated as part of an IVC that is global in scope.

2679 10.3 PROSPECTS FOR SCIENTIFIC ADVANCEMENT

2680 *Prospects for new data*

2681 The implementation of national-level guidelines, the development and broad application
2682 of the IVC, and the development of one or more national-level plot archives, are expected to
2683 catalyze the collecting of significant amounts of new field data as well as greatly increase access
2684 to legacy data. Using the guidelines and processes presented here, these new data should meet
2685 the need for consistency in identifying, describing, and documenting vegetation types and lead to
2686 advances in our understanding of vegetation as a whole.

2687 *Prospects for new analytic methods*

2688 One goal of the NVC is to create a framework for developing and characterizing
2689 vegetation alliances and associations. With a common and more organized approach to this goal,
2690 as well as generating more consistent field data that collectively can provide greater statistical
2691 power, the ability for experimentation and development of new analytic methods are expected to
2692 improve. In this regard, the prospects are quite good for new technical solutions to a host of
2693 unresolved problems in vegetation science.

2694 *Discovery and description of vegetation types*

2695 A true comprehensive classification of vegetation conformant with the guidelines
2696 contained in this document will emerge only as plot databases become comprehensive and the
2697 process of analysis and monographing is completed. A significant part of this work is the
2698 continuing reassessment of names and type concepts already published and proposed for
2699 consideration at the alliance and association level. The needed careful analysis and
2700 documentation is expected to be undertaken by the community of scientists working in agencies
2701 and other institutions, and to be published in papers or monographs.

2702 Peer-review teams ensure that proposals for changes in types, nomenclature, and
2703 description take place within a systematic, credible and consensual peer-review process.

2704 Researchers are encouraged to submit proposals for both new vegetation types and for revisions
2705 of types already described.

2706 Another area of work concerns changes in described units of vegetation resulting from
2707 the effects of invasive species, climate change, fire-suppression, edaphic change, and other
2708 broad-scale biophysical dynamics. For example, the enduring changes resulting from invasive
2709 species are not well understood, and the effect of the current episode of rapid global mixing of
2710 species on vegetation types with respect to stability, distribution, dynamics, functioning, has not
2711 been evaluated. The effects of climate change on species distributions are only beginning to be
2712 considered. All such factors need to be understood and their consequences reflected in the
2713 classification of vegetation.

2714 *New applications of present knowledge*

2715 The primary reason for establishing guidelines for vegetation classification has been to
2716 ensure compatibility of applications across federal agencies, state agencies, universities, and
2717 private organizations. While different applications may require map units unique to a project,
2718 use of an underlying standard vegetation classification as the basis for those map units will allow
2719 comparability. With advances in mapping and inventory, these applications are likely to expand
2720 in breadth. Some important applications include the following:

2721 Resource inventory, conservation, and management: Government and private agencies
2722 need to know which vegetation types are rare or threatened, which are exemplary in quality, and
2723 where they occur. These needs have initiated a new genre of vegetation inventory application.
2724 Recognition that many rare species are found in uncommon vegetation types has led to
2725 biodiversity conservation through maintenance and restoration measures focused on those types.

2726 Resource mapping: Established guidelines for vegetation classification should lead to
2727 improved consistency and reliability of vegetation mapping. Major land development projects,
2728 including those associated with, for example, Habitat Conservation Plans (see Endangered
2729 Species Act 1982, Kareiva et al. 1999), also will use fine-grained vegetation classification in
2730 development conservation management plans.

2731 Resource monitoring: Throughout North America, studies have been initiated to monitor
2732 changes in vegetation. Agencies are often mandated to monitor specific resources, such as
2733 forests or grasslands, or to assess ecosystem health. However, results from many of these efforts

2734 are too coarse in spatial or thematic resolution to be readily useful to land managers, and until
2735 recently there has been no consistent method used to define species assemblages to monitor, or
2736 the deviation of a community occurrence from the normal expression of that community. Such
2737 research requires clear definition and documentation of vegetation types as a baseline condition,
2738 followed by repeated measurements and comparisons over decades.

2739 Ecological integrity: Vegetation provides a fundamental framework for documenting and
2740 understanding the complexity and integrity of ecosystems. Vegetation is habitat for hundreds of
2741 thousands if not millions of species. As it changes over space and time, a ripple effect can be
2742 expressed throughout the world's ecosystems, and because vegetation can be mapped through
2743 remote-sensing technologies, it can be used as a surrogate for tracking and understanding many
2744 changes in ecosystems.

2745 The approach to and framework for an international classification of vegetation as
2746 described in this document are intended to facilitate long-term developments in resource
2747 conservation and management, environmental management, and basic vegetation science.
2748 Undoubtedly, new applications to vegetation classification will emerge and lead to further
2749 improvements. The guidelines described here provide a point of departure toward those ends.

2750 **ACKNOWLEDGMENTS**

2751 Ton Damman (1932-2000) worked tirelessly toward the creation of a unified vegetation
2752 classification for the United States, and toward this end he shared his wealth of experience from
2753 around the world. These guidelines have been shaped by his desire for a rigorous, plot-based
2754 approach to vegetation description and analysis. In recognition of his many contributions and
2755 his dedication to the work of the ESA Vegetation Panel, we in turn dedicate this work to his
2756 memory.

2757 The work of the Panel on Vegetation Classification has been made possible by support
2758 from the U.S. Geological Survey's Gap Analysis Program, the Federal Geographic Data
2759 Committee, the National Science Foundation, the National Center for Ecological Analysis and
2760 Synthesis, the Environmental Protection Agency, the Bureau of Land Management, the Army
2761 Environmental Policy Institute, and the Ecological Society of America's Sustainable Biosphere
2762 Program. Many individuals have contributed in one way or another to the development of these
2763 guidelines, including Mark Anderson, David Brown, Rex Crawford, Kathy Goodin, David
2764 Graber, John Harris, Miles Hemstrom, Bruce Kahn, Kat Maybury, Ken Metzler, William
2765 Michener, J. Scott Peterson, Thomas Philippi, Milo Pyne, Marion Reid, Rebecca Sharitz, Denise

2766 Shaw, Marie Loise Smith, Lesley Sneddon, Miklos Udvardy, Jan van Wagendonk, Alan
2767 Weakley, Neil West, and Peter White. Jim MacMahon, Jerry Franklin, Jane Lubchenko, Mary
2768 Barber, and Julie Denslow fostered establishment of the Panel and liaison to the ESA Governing
2769 Board. Thanks also to Elisabeth Brackney. Special thanks to Lori Hiding of ESA who
2770 provided unflinching staff support over the many years of deliberation in developing these
2771 guidelines.

2772 **LITERATURE CITED**

- 2773 Adam, P. 1994. Australian rainforests. Oxford University Press, New York. 308 p.
- 2774 Allen, R.B. 1992. RECCE: an inventory method for describing New Zealand's vegetation cover.
2775 For. Res. Inst. Bull. 176. Christchurch, New Zealand.
- 2776 Anderson M., P.S. Bourgeron, M.T. Bryer, R. Crawford, L. Engelking, D. Faber-Langendoen,
2777 M. Gallyoun, K. Goodin, D.H. Grossman, S. Landaal, K. Metzler, K.D. Patterson, M.
2778 Pyne, M. Reid, L. Sneddon, and A.S. Weakley. 1998. International classification of
2779 ecological communities; terrestrial vegetation of the United States. Volume II. The
2780 national vegetation classification system: list of types. The Nature Conservancy,
2781 Arlington, Virginia, USA. 502p.
- 2782 Arno, S.F., D.G. Simmerman, and R.E. Keane. 1985. Forest succession of four habitat types in
2783 western Montana. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service General Technical
2784 Report INT-177.
- 2785 Austin, M. P. and P.C. Heyligers. 1991. New approaches to vegetation survey design. In: C.R.
2786 Margules and M.P. Austin (eds.). Nature conservation: cost effective biological surveys
2787 and data analysis. CSIRO, Clayton South, Victoria, Australia. pp. 31-36.
- 2788 Avers, P.E., D. Cleland, W.H. McNab. 1994. National hierarchical framework of ecological
2789 units. In: Foley, Louise H., comp. Silviculture: from the cradle of forestry to ecosystem
2790 management. Gen. Tech. Rep. SE-88. Asheville, North Carolina: U.S. Department of
2791 Agriculture, Forest Service, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station. pp. 48-61.
- 2792 Bailey, R.G. 1996. Ecosystem geography. Springer-Verlag, New York. 204 pp.
- 2793 Bailey, R.G., M.E. Jensen, D.T. Cleland, and P.S. Bourgeron. 1994. Design and use of
2794 ecological mapping units. In: Jensen, M.E. and P.S. Bourgeron (eds.) Ecosystem
2795 management: Principles and applications, Volume II. USDA Forest Service General
2796 Technical Report PNW-GTR-318, Portland, Oregon, USA. pp.95-106.
- 2797 Barbour, M. 1994. Special committee on vegetation classification. *Bulletin of the Ecological*
2798 *Society of America* 75:252-253.
- 2799 Barbour, M.G., R.F. Fernau, J. M. Rey, N. Jurjavic, and E. B. Royce. 1998. Tree regeneration
2800 and early succession following clearcuts in red fir forests of the Sierra Nevada,
2801 California. *Journal of Forest Ecology and Management* 104:101-111.
- 2802 Barbour, M. G. and W. D. Billings (eds.). 2000. North American terrestrial vegetation, 2nd ed.
2803 Cambridge University Press, New York. 708 p.

- 2804 Barbour, M., D. Glenn-Lewin and O. Loucks. 2000. Progress towards North American
2805 vegetation classification at physiognomic and floristic levels. Proceedings, International
2806 Association of Vegetation Science Symposium, Opulus Press, Uppsala, Sweden. pp.
2807 111-114.
- 2808 Barbour M., A. Solomesch, C. Witham, R. Holland, R. Macdonald, S. Cilliers, J.A. Molina, J.
2809 Buck, and J. Hillman. 2003. Vernal pool vegetation of California: variation within
2810 pools. *Madroño* 50: 129-146.
- 2811 Beard, J.S. 1973. The physiognomic approach. In: R.H. Whittaker, Ed. Ordination and
2812 classification of communities. *Handbook of Vegetation Science* 5:355-386. Junk, The
2813 Hague.
- 2814 Berendsohn, W.G., 1995. The concept of "potential taxa" in databases. *Taxon* 44:207-212.
- 2815 Bestelmeyer, B.T., J.R. Brown, K.M. Havstad, R. Alexander, G. Chavez, and J. Herrick. 2003.
2816 Development and use of state-and-transition models for rangelands. *Journal of Range*
2817 *Management* 56(2):114-126.
- 2818 Borhidi, A. 1996. Phytogeography and vegetation ecology of Cuba. Akadémiai Kiadó,
2819 Budapest. 923 p..
- 2820 Bourgeron, P.S., and L.D. Engelking (eds.). 1994. A preliminary vegetation classification of the
2821 western United States. Unpublished report prepared by the Western Heritage Task Force
2822 for the Nature Conservancy, Boulder, Colorado, USA.
- 2823 Braun-Blanquet, J. 1928. Pflanzensoziologie. Gründzuge der Vegetationskunde. Springer-
2824 Verlag, Berlin, Germany. 330 p.
- 2825 _____. 1932. Plant Sociology: the study of plant communities. McGraw-Hill, New York,
2826 New York, USA. 439 p.
- 2827 _____. 1964. Pflanzensoziologie, Grundzüge der Vegetationskunde. Springer-Verlag, Vienna,
2828 Austria. 865 p.
- 2829 Brown, D.E., C.H. Lowe, and C.P. Pase. 1980. A digitized systematic classification for
2830 ecosystems with an illustrated summary of the natural vegetation of North America.
2831 USDA Forest Service General Technical Report RM-73. Rocky Mountain Forest and
2832 Range Experiment Station, Fort Collins, Colorado, USA.
- 2833 Bruelheide, H. 2000. A new measure of fidelity and its application to defining species groups.
2834 *Journal of Vegetation Science* 11:167-178.
- 2835 Ceska, A. 1999. Rejmanek's proposal to simplify phytosociological nomenclature. *Botanical*
2836 *Electronic News* 228:1-2
- 2837 Cleland, D. T., J. B. Hart, G. E. Host, K. S. Pregitzer, and C. W. Ramm. 1994. Ecological
2838 classification and inventory system of the Huron-Manistee National Forest. U.S. Forest
2839 Service, Region 9, Milwaukee, Wisconsin, USA.
- 2840 Cleland, D.T.; Avers, P.E.; McNab, W.H.; Jensen, M.E.; Bailey, R.G., King, T.; Russell, W.E.
2841 1997. National Hierarchical Framework of Ecological Units. In: Boyce, M. S.; Haney,
2842 A. (eds.), *Ecosystem Management Applications for Sustainable Forest and Wildlife*
2843 *Resources*. Yale University Press, New Haven, Connecticut, USA. pp. 181-200.

- 2844 Cooper, D.J. 1986. Arctic-alpine tundra vegetation of the Arrigetch Creek Valley, Brooks
2845 Range, Alaska. *Phytocoenologia* 14:467-555.
- 2846 Cowardin, L. W., V. Carter, F.C. Golet, and E. T. LaRoe. 1979. Classification of wetlands and
2847 deepwater habitats of the United States. Biological Service Program, U.S. Fish and
2848 Wildlife Service, FWS/OBS 79/31. Office of Biological Services, Fish and Wildlife
2849 Service, U.S. Department of Interior, Washington, D.C.
- 2850 Curtis, J.T. 1959. The vegetation of Wisconsin: an ordination of plant communities. University
2851 of Wisconsin Press, Madison, Wisconsin, USA. 657 p.
- 2852 Damman, A. W. H. 1979. The role of vegetation analysis in land classification. *Forestry*
2853 *Chronicle* 55:175-182.
- 2854 Darman. R.G. 1990. Circular No. A-16: coordination of surveying, mapping, and related spatial
2855 data activities. Office of Management and Budget, Washington, D.C.
- 2856 Daubenmire, R.F. 1952. Forest vegetation of northern Idaho and adjacent Washington, and its
2857 bearing on concepts of vegetation classification. *Ecological Monographs* 22:301-330.
- 2858 _____. 1953. Classification of the Conifer Forests of eastern Washington and Northern Idaho.
2859 *Northwest Science* 27:17-24.
- 2860 _____. 1959. A canopy-coverage method of vegetation analysis. *Northwest Science* 33:43-64.
- 2861 _____. 1968. Plant communities: a textbook of plant synecology. Harper and Row, New
2862 York. 300 p.
- 2863 _____. 1978. Plant Geography, with special reference to North America. Academic Press,
2864 New York. 338 p.
- 2865 Daubenmire, R.F. and J.B. Daubenmire. 1968. Forest vegetation of eastern Washington and
2866 northern Idaho. Washington Agricultural Experiment Station Technical Bulletin 60,
2867 Pullman, Washington, USA.
- 2868 Di Gregorio, A. And L.J.M. Jansen. 1996. FAO Land cover classification: a dichotomous,
2869 modular-hierarchical approach. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United
2870 Nations, Rome, Italy.
- 2871 Domin, K. 1928. The relations of the Tatra mountain vegetation to the edaphic factors of the
2872 habitat: a synecological study. *Acta Botanica Bohemica* 6/7:133-164.
- 2873 Drake, J. and D. Faber-Langendoen. 1997. An alliance-level classification of the vegetation of
2874 the Midwestern United States. A report prepared by The Nature Conservancy Midwest
2875 Conservation Science Department for the University of Idaho Cooperative Fish and
2876 Wildlife Research Unit. The Nature Conservancy Midwest Regional Office, Minneapolis,
2877 Minnesota, USA.
- 2878 Driscoll, R.S., D.L. Merkel, D.L. Radloff, D.E. Snyder, and J.S. Hagihara. 1984. An ecological
2879 land classification framework for the United States. U.S. Department of Agriculture,
2880 Forest Service, Miscellaneous Publication 1439, Washington, D.C.
- 2881 Ehrlich, P.R. 1997. A world of wounds: ecology and the human dilemma. Ecology Institute,
2882 Oldendorf/Luhe, Germany. 210 p.

- 2883 Ellenberg, H. 1988. *Vegetation ecology of Central Europe*. Fourth edition. Cambridge
2884 University Press, Cambridge, Massachusetts, USA. 731 p.
- 2885 Ellis, S.L., C. Fallat, N. Reece, and C. Riordan. 1977. *Guide to land cover and use classification*
2886 *systems employed by western governmental agencies*. FWS/OBS-77/05. Office of
2887 Biological Services, Fish and Wildlife Service, U.S. Department of the Interior,
2888 Washington, D.C.
- 2889 *Endangered Species Act*. 1982. Public Law 97-304, 92 Stst. 1411, Oct. 13, 1982. USA.
- 2890 EUROCONTROL and IfEN. 1998. *WGS 84 implementation manual*. European Organization
2891 for the Safety of Air Navigation, Brussels, Belgium, and Institute of Geodesy and
2892 Navigation, University FAF, Munich, Germany, Version 2.4. [Web resource:
2893 <http://www.wgs84.com/files/wgsman24.pdf>].
- 2894 Eyre, F.H., editor. 1980. *Forest cover types of the United States and Canada*. Society of
2895 American Foresters, Washington, D.C.
- 2896 Faber-Langendoen, D., editor. 2001. *Plant communities of the Midwest: classification in an*
2897 *ecological context*. Association for Biodiversity Information, Arlington, Virginia, USA.
2898 705 p.
- 2899 Faber-Langendoen, D., and P.F. Maycock. 1987. *Composition and soil-environment analysis of*
2900 *prairies on Walpole Island, southwestern Ontario*. *Canadian Journal of Botany*
2901 65:2410-2419.
- 2902 *Federal Register*. 1994. *Coordinating geographic data acquisition and access: the National*
2903 *Spatial Database Infrastructure*. Executive Order 12906 of April 11, Washington D.C.
2904 <http://www.fgdc.gov/publications/documents/geninfo/execord.html>
- 2905 Ferguson, D. E., P. Morgan, and F. D. Johnson (eds.). 1989. *Proceedings, Land Classifications*
2906 *Based on Vegetation: Applications for Resource Management*. 17-19 November 1987,
2907 Moscow, Idaho. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service General Technical
2908 Report INT 257, Ogden, Utah, USA.
- 2909 Fernald, M.L. 1950. *Gray's Manual of Botany*. American Book Company. New York, New
2910 York. 1632 p.
- 2911 FGDC. 1997. *Vegetation classification standard*. FGDC-STD-005. Vegetation Subcommittee,
2912 Federal Geographic Data Committee. FGDC Secretariat, U.S. Geological Survey, Reston,
2913 Virginia, USA. [Web resource: <http://www.fgdc.gov/standards>]
- 2914 Flahault, C. and C. Schröter. 1910a. *Phytogeographische Nomenklatur*. *Berichte und Anträge*
2915 3. Third International Congress of Botany. Brussels, Belgium. pp14-22.
- 2916 Flahault, C. and C. Schroter. 1910b. *Rapport sur la nomenclature phytogéographique*. Proc. 3rd
2917 Int. Bot. Cong., Brussels 1910, 1, 131-64.
- 2918 *Flora of North America* Editorial Committee, eds. 1993+. *Flora of North America North of*
2919 *Mexico*. 7+ vols. New York and Oxford.
- 2920 Fosberg, F.R. 1961. *A classification of vegetation for general purposes*. *Tropical Ecology* 2:1–
2921 28.

- 2922 Franklin, J.F., C.T. Dyrness, and W.H. Moir. 1971. A reconnaissance method for forest site
2923 classification. *Shinrin Richi* 12(1):1-14.
- 2924 Gabriel, H.W. and S.S. Talbot. 1984. Glossary of landscape and vegetation ecology for Alaska.
2925 Alaska Technical Report 10. Bureau of Land Management, U.S. Department of the
2926 Interior, Washington, D.C.
- 2927 Gauch, H.G. 1982. Multivariate analysis in community ecology. Cambridge University Press,
2928 London, UK. 298 p.
- 2929 Gleason, H. A. 1926. The individualistic concept of the plant association. *Bulletin of the*
2930 *Torrey Botanical Club* 53:7-26.
- 2931 Grossman, D.H., K.L. Goodin, and C.L. Reuss (eds.). 1994. Rare plant communities of the
2932 coterminous United States: an initial survey. A report prepared by The Nature
2933 Conservancy for the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Idaho Cooperative Fish and Wildlife
2934 Research Unit. The Nature Conservancy, Arlington, Virginia, USA.
- 2935 Grossman, D.H., D. Faber-Langendoen, A.S. Weakley, M. Anderson, P.S. Bourgeron, R.
2936 Crawford, K. Goodin, S. Landaal, K. Metzler, K. Patterson, M. Pyne, M. Reid, and L.
2937 Sneddon. 1998. International Classification of Ecological Communities: terrestrial
2938 Vegetation of the United States. Volume I. The national vegetation classification
2939 system: development, status, and applications. The Nature Conservancy, Arlington,
2940 Virginia, USA.
- 2941 Hall, G.M.J. 1992. PC-RECCE: Vegetation inventory data analysis. For. Res. Inst. Bull. 182.
2942 Christchurch, New Zealand.
- 2943 Jackson, J.A. (ed). 1997. Glossary of geology, 4th Ed. American Geological Institute,
2944 Alexandria, Virginia, USA. 769p.
- 2945 Jennings, M.D. 1993. Natural terrestrial cover classification: assumptions and definitions. GAP
2946 Analysis Technical Bulletin 2. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Idaho Cooperative Fish
2947 and Wildlife Research Unit, University of Idaho, Moscow, Idaho, USA.
- 2948 Jennings, M.D. 2000. Gap analysis: concepts, methods, and recent results. *Journal of*
2949 *Landscape Ecology* 15(1):5-20.
- 2950 Jongman, R.H.G., C.J.G. ter Braak, and O.F.R. Van Tongeren. 1995. Data analysis in
2951 community and landscape ecology. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK. 299p.
- 2952 Kareiva, P., S. Andelman, D. Doak, B. Elderd, M. Groom, J. Hoekstra, L. Hood, F. James, J.
2953 Lamoreux, G. LeBuhn, C. McCulloch, J. Regetz, L. Savage, M. Ruckelshaus, D. Skelly,
2954 H. Wilbur, K. Zamudio. 1999. Using science in habitat conservation plans. Report from
2955 National Center for Ecological Analysis and Synthesis, Santa Barbara, California, USA.
2956 [Web resource: <http://www.nceas.ucsb.edu/nceas-web/projects/97KAREI2/hcp-1999-01-14.pdf>]
2957
- 2958 Kartesz, J. T. 1994. A synonymized checklist of the vascular flora of the United States, Canada,
2959 and Greenland. Second edition. Volume 1. Checklist. Timber Press, Portland Oregon,
2960 USA.

- 2961 Kartesz, J.T. 1999. A Synonymized Checklist and Atlas with Biological Attributes for the
2962 Vascular Flora of the United States, Canada, and Greenland. First Edition. In: Kartesz,
2963 J.T., and C.A. Meacham. Synthesis of the North American Flora, Version 1.0. [computer
2964 application] North Carolina Botanical Garden, Chapel Hill, North Carolina, USA.
- 2965 Kent, M. and P. Coker. 1992. Vegetation description and analysis: a practical approach.
2966 Belhaven Press. London, UK. 363 p.
- 2967 Kimmins, J.P. 1997. Forest ecology: a foundation for sustainable management. Second edition.
2968 Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, New Jersey, USA. 596 p.
- 2969 Klinka, K. H. Qian, J. Pojar, and D.V. Meidinger. 1996. Classification of natural forest
2970 communities of coastal British Columbia, Canada. *Vegetatio* 125:149-168.
- 2971 Klopatek, J.M., R.J. Olson, C.J. Emerson, and J.L. Jones. 1979. Land use conflicts with natural
2972 vegetation in the United States. *Environmental Conservation* 6:191-199.
- 2973 Komárková, V. 1979. Alpine Vegetation of the Indian Peaks area, Front Range, Colorado
2974 Rocky Mountains. J. Cramer, Vaduz, Lichtenstein. 2 vol., 591p.
- 2975 Krajina, V.J. 1933. Die Pflanzengesellschaften de Mlynica-Tales in den Vysoke Tatry (Hohe
2976 Tatra). Mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der ökologischen Verhältnisse. *Botan. Central.*,
2977 *Beih. Abt. II*, 50:774-957; 51:1-224.
- 2978 Küchler, A.W. 1988. The nature of vegetation. In: Vegetation mapping, Küchler and
2979 Zonneveld, eds., Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, Netherlands.
- 2980 Lapin, M., and B. V. Barnes. 1995. Using the landscape ecosystem approach to assess species
2981 and ecosystem diversity. *Conservation Biology* 9:1148-1158.
- 2982 LaRoe, E.T., G.S. Garris, C.E. Puckett, P.D. Doran, and M.J. Mac (eds.). 1995. Our living
2983 resources: a report to the nation on the distribution, abundance, and health of U.S. plants,
2984 animals, and ecosystems. U.S. Department of the Interior, National Biological Service,
2985 Washington, D.C.
- 2986 Layser, E.F. 1974. Vegetative classification: its application to forestry in the northern Rocky
2987 Mountains. *Journal of Forestry* 72: 354-357.
- 2988 Lee, H.T., W.D. Bakowsky, J. Riley, J. Bowles, M. Puddister, P. Uhlig and S. McMurray. 1998.
2989 Ecological land classification for Southern Ontario: First approximation and its
2990 application. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Southcentral Science Section,
2991 Science Development and Technology Branch. SCSS Field Guide FG-02. 225 p.
- 2992 Lins, K.F., and R.L. Kleckner. 1996. Land use and land cover mapping in the United States: An
2993 overview and history of the concept. In: Gap analysis: A landscape approach to
2994 biodiversity planning, Scott et. al , eds. American Society for Photogrammetry and
2995 Remote Sensing, Bethesda, Maryland, USA. pp 56-65.
- 2996 Loucks, O.L. 1995. Special committee on vegetation classification: annual report. *Bulletin of*
2997 *the Ecological Society of America* 76:221-223.
- 2998 _____. 1996. 100 years after Cowles: a national classification of vegetation. *Bulletin of the*
2999 *Ecological Society of America* 77:75-76.

- 3000 Loveland, T.R., Z. Shu, D.O. Ohlen, J.F. Brown, B.C. Reed, and L. Yang. 1999. an analysis of
3001 the IGBP global land-cover characterization process. *Photogrammetric Engineering &*
3002 *Remote Sensing*, 65(9):1021-1032.
- 3003 Ludwig, J.A. and Reynolds, J.F. 1988. *Statistical ecology: a primer on methods and computing.*
3004 Wiley, New York. 337 p.
- 3005 Mac, M.J., P.A. Opler, C.E. Puckett Haeker, and P.D. Doran, eds. 1998. Status and trends of the
3006 Nation's biological resources. 2 vols. U.S. Department of the Interior, U.S. Geological
3007 Survey, Reston, Virginia, USA.
- 3008 Mack, R.N. 1986. Alien plant invasion into the Intermountain West: a case history. In: H.A.
3009 Mooney and J.A. Drake (eds.). *Ecology of Biological Invasions of North America and*
3010 *Hawaii.* Springer-Verlag, New York. pp 191-212.
- 3011 McAuliffe, J. R. 1990. A rapid survey method for the estimation of density and cover in desert
3012 plant communities. *Journal of Vegetation Science* 1:653-656.
- 3013 McCune, B., and M.J. Mefford. 1999. Multivariate analysis of ecological data, PC-ORD
3014 version 4.17. MjM Software, Glenden Beach, Oregon, USA.
- 3015 McCune, B., J.B. Grace, and D.L. Urban. 2002. *Analysis of ecological communities.* MjM
3016 Software Design, Glenden Beach, Oregon, USA. 300p.
- 3017 McIntosh, R.P. 1967. The continuum concept of vegetation. *Botanical Review* 45:130-187.
- 3018 McMillan, C. 1969. Discussion. In: *Systematic biology; Proceedings of an International*
3019 *Conference, held at the University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, June 1967.* National
3020 Academy of Sciences, Washington, D.C. pp.203-206.
- 3021 McNab, W.H. and P.E. Avers. 1994. Ecological subregions of the United States: section
3022 descriptions. Administrative Publication WO-WSA-5. U.S. Department of Agriculture,
3023 U.S. Forest Service, Washington, D.C.
- 3024 Michener, William K., James W. Brunt, John J. Helly, Thomas B. Kirchner, Susan G. Stafford,
3025 1997. Nongeospatial metadata for the ecological sciences. *Ecological Applications: Vol.*
3026 *7, No. 1, pp. 330–342.*
- 3027 Minnesota Natural Heritage Program (Minnesota Department of Natural Resources). 1993.
3028 Minnesota's native vegetation: a key to natural communities. Version 1.5. Minnesota
3029 Department of Natural Resources Natural Heritage Program, Biological Report No. 20. St.
3030 Paul. 111 p.
- 3031 Moravec, J. 1973. The determination of the minimal area of phytocenoses. *Folia Geobotanica*
3032 *et Phytotaxonomica* 8: 23-47.
- 3033 Moravec, J. 1993. Syntaxonomic and nomenclatural treatment of Scandinavian-type
3034 associations and sociations. *Journal of Vegetation Science* 4:833-838.
- 3035 Morse, L.E., L.S. Kutner, and J.T. Kartez. 1995. Potential impacts of climate change on North
3036 American flora. pp 392-395 In: E.T. LaRoe, G.S. Garris, C.E. Puckett, P.D. Doran, and
3037 M.J. Mac (eds.). *Our Living Resources: a Report to the Nation on the Distribution,*
3038 *Abundance, and Health of U.S. Plants, Animals, and Ecosystems.* U.S. Department of
3039 the Interior, National Biological Service, Washington, D.C.

- 3040 Mucina, L. 1997. Conspectus of classes of European vegetation. *Folia Geobotanica et*
3041 *Phytotaxonomica*. 32:117-172.
- 3042 Mucina, L, J.S. Rodwell, J.H.J. Schaminee, and H. Dierschke. 1993. European vegetation
3043 survey: current state of some national programs. *Journal of Vegetation Science* 4:429-
3044 438.
- 3045 Mueller-Dombois, D. and H. Ellenberg. 1974. Aims and methods of vegetation ecology. John
3046 Wiley, New York.
- 3047 Naeem, S., T. Chapin, Robert Costanza, Paul Ehrlich, Frank B. Golley, David Hooper, J. H.
3048 Lawton, Robert O'Neil, Harold Mooney, O. Sala, Amy Symstad, and David Tilman.
3049 1999. Biodiversity and Ecosystem Functioning. Ecological Issues No. 4. Ecological
3050 Society of America, Washington, D.C.
- 3051 Nakamura, Y. and M.M. Grandtner. 1994. A comparative study of the alpine vegetation of
3052 Eastern North America and Japan. pp. 335-347 In: A. Miyawaki, K. Iwatsuki, and M.M.
3053 Grandtner (eds.). *Vegetation in Eastern North America*. University of Tokyo Press,
3054 Tokyo, Japan.
- 3055 Nakamura, Y., M.M. Grandtner, and N. Vilenue. 1994. Boreal and oroboreal coniferous forest
3056 of Eastern North American and Japan. Pp. 121-154 In: A. Miyawaki, K. Iwatsuki, and
3057 M.M. Grandtner (eds.). *Vegetation in Eastern North America*. University of Tokyo
3058 Press, Tokyo, Japan.
- 3059 National Science and Technology Council. 1997. Integrating the nation's environmental
3060 monitoring and research networks and programs: a proposed framework. Committee on
3061 Environment and Natural Resources, Environmental Monitoring Team, Washington,
3062 D.C.
- 3063 NatureServe. 2003. International Ecological Classification Standard: International Vegetation
3064 Classification. Central Databases, NatureServe, Arlington, Virginia, USA.
- 3065 NatureServe Explorer: an online encyclopedia of life. 2002. Version 1.6. Arlington, Virginia,
3066 USA. [Web resource: <http://www.natureserve.org/explorer>. (Accessed January 15, 2002
3067].
- 3068 Naveh, Z. and R.H. Whittaker. 1979. Structural and floristic diversity of shrublands and
3069 woodlands in northern Israel and other Mediterranean areas. *Vegetatio* 41:171-190.
- 3070 Nelson, P. W. 1985. The terrestrial natural communities of Missouri. Missouri Department of
3071 Natural Resources, Jefferson City, Missouri, USA.
- 3072 Nicolson, M., and R.P. McIntosh. 2002. H.A. Gleason and the individualistic hypothesis
3073 revisited. *Bulletin of the Ecological Society of America*, 83(2):133-142.
- 3074 Noss, R.F., E.T. LaRoe III, and J.M. Scott. 1995. Endangered ecosystems of the United States: a
3075 preliminary assessment of loss and degradation. Biological Report 28, U.S. Department
3076 of the Interior, National Biological Service, Washington, D.C.
- 3077 Noss, R.F. and R.L. Peters. 1995. Endangered ecosystems: a status report on America's
3078 vanishing habitat and wildlife. Defenders of Wildlife, Washington, D.C.

- 3079 NRCS (U.S. Department of Agriculture, Natural Resources Conservation Service). 2001.
3080 National Soil Survey Handbook, title 430-VI, part 614.05..
- 3081 Overpeck, J.T., P.J. Bartlein, and T. Bebb III. 1991. Potential magnitude of future vegetation
3082 changes in eastern North America: comparison with the past. *Science* 254:692-695.
- 3083 Pearlstine, L, A. McKerrow, M. Pyne, S. Williams, and S. McNulty. 1998. Compositional
3084 groups and ecological complexes: a methodological approach to realistic GAP mapping.
3085 Gap Analysis Bulletin No. 7. National Gap Analysis Program, Moscow, Idaho, USA.
3086 [web resource: <http://www.gap.uidaho.edu/Bulletins/7/CGECAMABVM.htm>].
- 3087 Peet, R.K. 1980. Ordination as a tool for analyzing complex data sets. *Vegetatio* 42:171-174.
- 3088 _____ . 1981. Forest vegetation of the northern Colorado Front Range: composition and
3089 dynamics. *Vegetatio* 45:3-75.
- 3090 _____ . 1994. Vegetation classification in contemporary ecology. Ecological Society of
3091 America Vegetation Section Newsletter 2-5, Washington D.C.
- 3092 Peet, R. K., T. R. Wentworth, and P. S. White. 1998. The North Carolina Vegetation Survey
3093 protocol: a flexible, multipurpose method for recording vegetation composition and
3094 structure. *Castanea* 63:262-274.
- 3095 Peinado, M., F. Alcaraz, J. Delgadillo, J.L. Aguirre, J. Alvarez, and M. de la Cruz. 1994. The
3096 coastal salt marshes of California and Baja California: phytosociological typology and
3097 zonation. *Vegetatio* 110:55-66.
- 3098 Peinado, M., J.L. Aguirre, and M. de la Cruz. 1998. A phytosociological survey of the boreal
3099 forest (*Vaccinio-Piceetea*) In: North America. *Plant Ecology* 137:151-202.
- 3100 Pfister, R. D. and S. F. Arno. 1980. Classifying forest habitat types based on potential climax
3101 vegetation. *Forest Science* 26:52-70.
- 3102 Pignatti, S., E. Oberdorfer, J.H.J. Schaminee, and V. Westhoff. 1994. On the concept of
3103 vegetation class in phytosociology. *Journal of Vegetation Science* 6:143-152.
- 3104 Podani, J. 2000. Introduction to the exploration of multivariate biological data. Backhuys
3105 Publishers, Leiden, Hungary. 407p.
- 3106 Ponomarenko, S. and R. Alvo. 2000. Perspectives on developing a Canadian classification of
3107 ecological communities. Canadian Forest Service, Science Branch, Information Report
3108 ST-X-18E. Natural Resources Canada, Ottawa. 50 p.
- 3109 Poore, M. E. D. 1962. The method of successive approximation in descriptive ecology.
3110 *Advances in Ecological Research* 1:35-68.
- 3111 Pyle, R.L. 2004. Taxonomer: a relational data model for managing information relevant to
3112 taxonomic research. *PhyloInformatics* 1:1-54.
- 3113 Raunkiaer, C. 1934. The life forms of plants and statistical plant geography. Clarendon, Oxford.
3114 632 pp.
- 3115 Reed, R.A., R.K. Peet, M.W. Palmer and P.S. White. 1993. Scale dependence of vegetation-
3116 environment correlations in a Piedmont woodland, North Carolina, USA. *Journal of*
3117 *Vegetation Science* 4: 329-340.

- 3118 Rejmanek, M. 1997. Towards a simplification of phytosociological nomenclature. *Folia*
3119 *Geobotanica et Phytotaxonomica* 32:419-420.
- 3120 Reschke, C. 1990. Ecological communities of New York State. New York Natural Heritage
3121 Program. New York State Department of Environmental Conservation, Latham, New
3122 York, USA.
- 3123 Reid, M.S., K.A. Schulz, P.J. Comer, M.H. Schindel, D.R. Culver, D.A. Sarr, and M.C. Damm.
3124 1999. Descriptions of vegetation alliances of the coterminous western United States.
3125 The Nature Conservancy, Boulder, Colorado, USA.
- 3126 Rivas-Martínez, D. Sánchez-Mata, and M. Costa. 1999. North American boreal and western
3127 temperate forest vegetation. *Itinera Geobotanica* 12:5-316.
- 3128 Rodwell, J.S. (ed.). 1991. British plant communities. Volume I. Woodlands and scrub.
3129 Cambridge University Press, New York. 405 p.
- 3130 Rodwell, J.S., S. Pignatti, L. Mucina, and J.H.J. Sohamined. 1995. European vegetation survey:
3131 update on progress. *Journal of Vegetation Science* 6:759-762.
- 3132 Rodwell, J.S., J.H.J. Schamineé, L. Mucian, S. Pignatti, J. Dring and D. Moss. 2002. The
3133 diversity of European vegetation. An overview of phytosociological alliances and their
3134 relationships to EUNIS habitats. Wageningen, NL. EC-LNV. Report EC-LNV nr.
3135 2002/054. 168 p.
- 3136 Salisbury, E. J. 1940. Ecological aspects of plant taxonomy. In: Huxley, J. (ed.). The new
3137 systematics. Clarendon Press, Oxford, UK. pp.329-340.
- 3138 Sawyer, J. O. and T. Keeler-Wolf. 1995. A manual of California vegetation. California Native
3139 Plant Society, Sacramento, California, USA.
- 3140 Schafale, M. P., and A. S. Weakley. 1990. Classification of the natural communities of North
3141 Carolina: third approximation. North Carolina Department of Environment, Health and
3142 Natural Resources, Division of State Parks and Recreation, Natural Heritage Program,
3143 Raleigh, North Carolina, USA.
- 3144 Schaminée, J.H.J., S.M. Hennekens, and G. Thébaud. 1993. A syntaxonomical study of
3145 subalpine heathland communities in West European low mountain ranges. *Journal of*
3146 *Vegetation Science* 4:125-134.
- 3147 Scott, J. M., F. Davis, B. Csuti, R. Noss, B. Butterfield, C. Groves, H. Anderson, S. Caicco, F.
3148 D'Erchia, T. C. Edwards Jr., J. Ulliman, and R. Wright. 1993. Gap Analysis: a geographic
3149 approach to protection of biological diversity. *Wildlife Monograph* 123, 1-41.
- 3150 Scott, J.M., and M.D. Jennings. 1998. Large-area mapping of biodiversity. *Annals of the*
3151 *Missouri Botanical Garden*, 85(1):34-47.
- 3152 Shiftlet, T.N. (ed.). 1994. Rangeland cover types of the United States. Society for Range
3153 Management, Denver, Colorado, USA.
- 3154 Shimwell, D.W. 1971. Description and classification of vegetation. Sidgwick and Jackson,
3155 London. 322 p.

- 3156 Shmida, A. 1984. Whittaker's plant diversity sampling method. *Israel Journal of Botany*
3157 33:41-46.
- 3158 Sims, R. A., W. D. Towill, K. A. Baldwin, and G. M. Wickware. 1989. Field guide to the forest
3159 ecosystem classification for northwestern Ontario. Forestry Canada, Ontario Ministry of
3160 Natural Resources, Thunder Bay, Ontario, Canada.
- 3161 Smith, M.-L. 1995. Community and edaphic analysis of upland northern hardwood
3162 communities, central Vermont, USA. *Forest Ecology and Management* 72:239-245.
- 3163 Sneddon, L., M. Anderson, and K. Metzler. 1994. A classification and description of terrestrial
3164 community alliances in the Nature Conservancy's Eastern region: first approximation. A
3165 report prepared by the Nature Conservancy Eastern Regional Office for the University of
3166 Idaho Cooperative Fish and Wildlife Research Unit. Nature Conservancy Eastern
3167 Regional Office, Boston, Massachusetts, USA.
- 3168 Specht, R., E.M. Roe, and V.H. Boughton. 1974. Conservation of major plant communities in
3169 Australia and Papua New Guinea. *Australian Journal of Botany* Supplement 7.
- 3170 Sperberg-McQueen, C.M. and H. Thompson. 2003. XML Schema, revision 1.87. W3C,
3171 Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Cambridge, Massachusetts, USA. Available
3172 online [<http://www.w3.org/XML/Schema>].
- 3173 Spribille, T., H.G. Stroh, and F.J. Triepke. 2001. Are habitat types compatible with floristically-
3174 derived associations. *Journal of Vegetation Science* 12:791-796.
- 3175 Spribille, T. 2002. The mountain forests of British Columbia and the American Northwest:
3176 floristic patterns and syntaxonomy. *Folia Geobotanica* 37: 475-508.
- 3177 SRM (Society for Range Management). 1989. Glossary of terms used in range management.
3178 Society for Range Management, Denver, Colorado, USA.
- 3179 Stachurska-Swakon, A. and T. Spribille. 2002. Forest communities of the northern Whitefish
3180 Range, Rocky Mountains, Montana, U.S.A. *Folia Geobotanica* 37: 509-540.
- 3181 Stohlgren, T.J., M.B. Falkner, and L.D. Schell. 1995. A modified-Whittaker nested vegetation
3182 sampling method. *Vegetatio* 117:113-121.
- 3183 Tabachnik, B.G., and L.S. Fidell. 1989. Using multivariate statistics. Allyn & Bacon, Needham
3184 Heights, Massachusetts, USA. 932 p.
- 3185 Taylor, B.N. 1995. Guide for the Use of the International System of Units (SI). National
3186 Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 811, U.S. Government
3187 Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 84p.
- 3188 Thomas, J.W. (ed.). 1979. Wildlife habitats in managed forests in the Blue Mountains of
3189 Oregon and Washington. Agriculture Handbook Number 553. U.S. Department of
3190 Agriculture, Forest Service, Washington, D.C.
- 3191 Tüxen, R. 1956. Die heutige natürliche potentielle Vegetation als Gegenstand der
3192 vegetationskartierung. Remagen. *Berichte zur Deutschen Landeskunde* 19:200-246.
- 3193 Tyrrell, L. E., G. J. Nowacki, T. R. Crow, D. S. Buckley, E. A. Nauertz, J. N. Niese, J. L.
3194 Rollinger, and J. C. Zasada. 1998. Information about old growth for selected forest type

- 3195 groups in the Eastern United States. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-197. St. Paul, Minnesota: U.S.
3196 Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, North Central Forest Experiment Station.
3197 507p.
- 3198 UNEP/FAO (United Nations Environment Programme/Food and Agriculture Organization of the
3199 United Nations). 1995. Background note on ongoing activities relating to land use and
3200 land cover classification. United Nations, Nairobi, Kenya.
- 3201 UNESCO (United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization). 1973.
3202 International Classification and Mapping of Vegetation. Series 6. Ecology and
3203 Conservation. United Nations, Paris, France.
- 3204 USDA, NRCS. 2000. The PLANTS Database, National Plant Data Center, Baton Rouge, LA,
3205 USA. (web resource: <http://plants.usda.gov>).
- 3206 USDA, NRCS. 2002. National Soil Survey Handbook, title 430-VI. Available online
3207 [<http://soils.usda.gov/technical/handbook/>].
- 3208 Vitousek, P.M., H. A. Mooney, J. Lubchenco, J.M. Melillo. 1997. Human domination of earth's
3209 ecosystems. *Science* 277:494-499.
- 3210 Walker, M.D., D.A. Walker, and N.A. Auerbach. 1994. Plant communities of a tussock tundra
3211 landscape in the Brooks Range Foothills. *Journal of Vegetation Science* 5:843-866.
- 3212 Weakley, A.S., K. Patterson, S. Landaal, M. Pyne, and M. Gallyoun. 1997. An alliance-level
3213 classification of the vegetation of the southeastern United States. A report prepared for
3214 the University of Idaho Cooperative Fish and Wildlife Research Unit by The Nature
3215 Conservancy Southeastern Regional Office, Chapel Hill, North Carolina, USA.
- 3216 Weakley, A. S., K. D. Patterson, S. Landaal, M. Pyne, and others (compilers). 1998.
3217 International classification of ecological communities: terrestrial vegetation of the
3218 southeastern United States. Working draft of March 1998. The Nature Conservancy,
3219 Southeast Regional Office, Southern Conservation Science Department, Community
3220 Ecology Group, Chapel Hill, North Carolina, USA.
- 3221 Weber, H.E., J. Moravec, and J.-P. Theurillat. International Code of Phytosociological
3222 Nomenclature. 3rd edition. *Journal of Vegetation Science* 11(5):739-768.
- 3223 Wellner, C.A. 1989. Classification of habitat types in the Western United States. In: D.E.
3224 Ferguson, P. Morgan, and F.D. Johnson (eds.). Proceedings, Land Classifications Based
3225 on Vegetation: applications for Resource Management. 17-19 November 1987, Moscow,
3226 Idaho. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service General Technical Report INT
3227 257, Ogden, Utah, USA.
- 3228 Werger, M. J. A. 1973. Phytosociology of the Upper Orange River Valley, South Africa.
3229 Botanical Research Institute, Department of Agriculture and Fisheries, Pretoria, South
3230 Africa. 98 p.
- 3231 Westhoff, V. and E. van der Maarel. 1973. The Braun-Blanquet approach. In: R.H. Whittaker
3232 (ed.). Handbook of Vegetation Science. Part V. Ordination and Classification of
3233 Communities. Junk, The Hague, The Netherlands. pp 617-726.

- 3234 Whittaker, R.H. 1956. Vegetation of the Great Smoky mountains. *Ecological Monographs*
3235 26:1-80.
- 3236 _____. 1962. Classification of natural communities. *Botanical Review* 28:1-239.
- 3237 _____. (ed.). 1973. Ordination and Classification of Communities. *Handbook of Vegetation*
3238 *Science* 5. Junk, The Hague.
- 3239 _____. 1973a. Approaches to classifying vegetation. In: R.H. Whittaker, ed. Ordination and
3240 Classification of Communities. *Handbook of Vegetation Science* 5:323-354. Junk, The
3241 Hague.
- 3242 _____. 1975. Communities and ecosystems. Second edition. MacMillan, New York.
- 3243 Whittaker, R.H., W.A. Niering, and M.D. Crisp. 1979. Structure, pattern, and diversity of a
3244 mallee community in New South Wales. *Vegetatio* 39:65-76.
- 3245 Whittaker, R.H. 1960. Vegetation of the Siskiyou Mountains, Oregon and California.
3246 *Ecological Monographs* 30:279-338.
- 3247 Wilson, M.V., and A. Shmida. 1984. Measuring beta diversity with presence-absence data.
3248 *Journal of Ecology* 72:1055-1064.
- 3249 Wilcove, D.S., D. Rothstein, J. Dubow, A. Phillips, and E. Losos. 1998. Quantifying threats to
3250 imperiled species in the United States: assessing the relative importance of habitat
3251 destruction, alien species, pollution, overexploitation, and disease. *Bioscience* 48:607-
3252 616.
- 3253 Yorks, T.E., and S. Dabydeen. 1998. Modification of the Whittaker sampling technique to
3254 assess plant diversity in forested natural areas. *Natural Areas Journal* 18:185-189.

3255 GLOSSARY

- 3256 **Alliance** — A group of associations with a defined range of species composition, habitat
3257 conditions, and physiognomy, and which contains one or more of a set of
3258 diagnostic species, typically at least one of which is found in the upper most or
3259 dominant stratum of the vegetation. (This definition includes both floristic and
3260 physiognomic criteria, in keeping with the integrated physiognomic-floristic
3261 hierarchy of the NVC. It is similar to the FGDC 1997 definition: a
3262 physiognomically uniform group of Associations sharing one or more diagnostic
3263 (dominant, differential, indicator, or character) species, which, as a rule, are found
3264 in the uppermost stratum of the vegetation.)
- 3265 **Association** — A vegetation classification unit consistent with a defined range of species
3266 composition, diagnostic species, habitat conditions, and physiognomy.
- 3267 **Associes** — a type of vegetation unit applied in the Western US tradition, to avoid confusion
3268 with association (q.v.) as used in the Western US tradition to refer to the latest
3269 successional or climax (q.v.) stage; suggested for classification of plant communities in
3270 earlier stages of secondary succession (Daubenmire 1968).
- 3271 **Basal Area** — the surface area of a woody stem (or stems) if cut off at a specific height (“breast
3272 height” is here defined as 1.37 meters or 4.5 feet).

- 3273 **Character species** — a species that shows a distinct maximum concentration (quantitatively and
3274 by presence) in a well-definable vegetation types, sometimes recognized at local,
3275 regional, and absolute geographic scales (Mueller-Dombois and Ellenberg 1974, p. 178,
3276 208; Bruelheide 2002), c.f. differential species.
- 3277 **Class** — the first level in the NVC hierarchy (see Figure 1); based on the structure of the
3278 vegetation and determined by the relative percentage of cover and the height of the
3279 dominant, life forms (FGDC 1997). As used here for a physiognomic NVC category, the
3280 term does not correspond with "class" as used strictly in phytosociological classifications.
- 3281 **Classification** — the grouping of similar types (in this case – vegetation types) according to
3282 criteria (in this case - physiognomic and floristic). The rules for classification must be
3283 clarified prior to delineation of the types within the classification standard. Classification
3284 methods should be clear, precise, and based upon objective criteria so that the outcome is
3285 theoretically independent of who applies the classification. (UNEP/FAO 1995, FGDC
3286 1997).
- 3287 **Classification Plot Records** — plot records that contain the data necessary to inform the
3288 development or revision of the floristic units within the NVC. Such plots typically
3289 contain high quality data on floristic composition and structure, and conform to the
3290 guidelines articulated in Section 5.3 (see Occurrence Plot Records; also Appendix 1).
- 3291 **Climax Vegetation** — the final, relatively stable community at the conclusion of ecological
3292 succession that is able to reproduce itself indefinitely under existing environmental
3293 conditions (Gabriel and Talbot 1984).
- 3294 **Community** — a group of organisms living together and linked together by their effects on one
3295 another and their responses to the environment they share (Whittaker 1975).
- 3296 **Community Constant (species)** — a species that occurs frequently in stands of a type;
3297 synonymous with constant companion.
- 3298 **Constancy** — the percentage of plots in a given data set that a taxon occurs in.
- 3299 **Cover Estimate** — an estimate of the percentage of the surface of the earth (within a specified
3300 area, or plot) covered by biomass of plants of a specified group (from one species to all
3301 species, from one horizontal layer to all growth.). This can be viewed as the percentage
3302 of the sky that would be obscured by the biomass. In contrast to leaf area index, total
3303 cover cannot exceed 100%.
- 3304 **Cover Type** — a community type defined on the basis of the plant species forming a plurality of
3305 composition and abundance (FGDC 1997; see this document Section 3.1, also see Eyre
3306 1980).
- 3307 **Diagnostic Species** — any species or group of species whose relative constancy or abundance
3308 differentiates one vegetation type from another (see Sections 3.1, 4.2). This is consistent
3309 with, but more narrow than, the FGDC 1997 definition “an indicator species or
3310 phytometer used to evaluate an area, or site, for some characteristic,” Similarly, Curtis
3311 (1959) defined a diagnostic species as a plant of high fidelity to a particular community
3312 and one whose presence serves as a criterion of recognition of that community (Curtis

- 3313 1959). In the Braun-Blanquet system, diagnostic species comprise the character and
3314 differential species used to delimit associations (Bruehlheide 2000).
- 3315 **Differential Species** — A plant species that is distinctly more widespread or successful in one of
3316 a pair of plant communities than in the other, although it may be still more successful in
3317 other communities not under discussion (Curtis 1959). This is consistent with
3318 Bruehlheide’s (2000) definition: a species “that shows a distinct accumulation of
3319 occurrences in one or more vegetation units”, and clearly distinguishes the concept from
3320 that of a character species which should show a distinctive accumulation of occurrences
3321 in only one type.
- 3322 **Division** — level in the FGDC physiognomic classification standard separating Earth cover into
3323 either vegetated or non-vegetated categories (FGDC 1997).
- 3324 **Dominance** — the extent to which given taxa (or growth forms) predominate in a community
3325 because of their size, abundance, or cover. Dominance is interpreted in two different
3326 ways for NVC purposes: (1) where vegetation covers more than 25% of the area, the
3327 taxon or taxa (or growth forms) within a given stratum having the greatest amount of
3328 cover above 25% is considered dominant; and (2) where vegetation covers less than 25%
3329 of the area, the taxon or taxa (or growth forms) with the highest percent canopy cover is
3330 considered dominant. In the case of a 'tie', the upper canopy will be referred to as the
3331 dominant growth form (FGDC 1997). (Other definitions sometimes applied refer to the
3332 most common taxon of the upper-most stratum, the taxa with the greatest relative basal
3333 area, or the more successful taxon in a competitive interaction.)
- 3334 **Dominance Type** — a class of communities defined by the dominance of one or more species,
3335 which are usually the most important ones in the uppermost or dominant layer of the
3336 community, but sometimes of a lower layer of higher coverage (Gabriel and Talbot
3337 1984).
- 3338 **Dominant Species** — species with the highest percent of cover, usually in the uppermost
3339 dominant layer (in other contexts dominant species can be defined in terms of biomass,
3340 density, height, coverage, etc., (Kimmins 1997; see Section 2.1.3)).
- 3341 **Entitation** — the process by which we recognize and define entities, usually by dividing a
3342 continuously varying phenomenon into a set of discreet entities. In vegetation ecology
3343 entitation refers to the act of segmenting an area of vegetation into homogeneous entities,
3344 within which samples (plots) can be placed (see Mueller-Dombois and Ellenberg 1974),
3345 or the division of community data (usually plot data) into discrete vegetation classes.
- 3346 **Existing Vegetation** — vegetation found at a given location at the time of observation (in
3347 contrast to potential vegetation).
- 3348 **Fidelity** — the degree to which a species is confined in a given vegetation unit. The fidelity of a
3349 species determines whether it can be considered a differential or character species, or just
3350 a companion or accidental species (Bruehlheide 2000)
- 3351 **Formation** — a level in the NVC based on physiognomic grouping of vegetation units with
3352 broadly defined environmental and additional physiognomic factors in common. (FGDC
3353 1997). Grossman et al. (1998) clarified this definition as “a level in the classification
3354 hierarchy below subgroup (see Figure 1) which represents vegetation types that share a

- 3355 definite physiognomy or structure within broadly defined environmental factors, relative
3356 landscape positions, or hydrologic regimes.” Both of these definitions derive from
3357 Whittaker 1962: a "community type defined by dominance of a given growth form in the
3358 uppermost stratum of the community, or by a combination of dominant growth forms."
- 3359 **Frequency** — percentage of observations within which a taxon occurs.
- 3360 **Group** — the level in the classification hierarchy below subclass (see Figure 1) based on leaf
3361 characters and identified and named in conjunction with broadly defined macroclimatic
3362 types to provide a structural-geographic orientation (Grossman et al. 1998).
- 3363 **Growth form** — the characteristic structural or functional type of plant. Growth form is usually
3364 consistent within a species, but may vary under extremes of environment (Mueller-
3365 Dombois 1974). Growth forms determine the visible structure or physiognomy of plant
3366 communities (Whittaker 1973a). As defined here life forms, constitute a subset of the
3367 characteristics that are combined as growth forms (see section 5.3).
- 3368 **Habitat Type** — a collective term for all parts of the land surface supporting, or capable of
3369 supporting, a particular kind of climax plant association (Daubenmire 1978; Gabriel and
3370 Talbot 1984).
- 3371 **Indicator Species** — a species whose presence, abundance, or vigor is considered to indicate
3372 certain site conditions (Gabriel and Talbot 1984); synonymous with diagnostic species.
- 3373 **Layer (vegetation)** — a structural component of a community consisting of plants of
3374 approximately the same height stature (e.g., tree, shrub, and field layer), here
3375 synonymous with stratum. (Note that elsewhere “strata” are sometimes used to designate
3376 vertical layers of foliage with the foliage of a specific plant divided into more than one
3377 stratum, whereas as used here an individual plant always belongs exclusively to the one
3378 layer or stratum in which the majority of its leaf area occurs.)
- 3379 **Life form** — plant type defined by the characteristic structural features and method of
3380 perennation, generally as defined by Raunkiaer (1934; see Beard 1973).
- 3381 **Metadata** — information about data. This describes the content, quality, condition, and other
3382 characteristics of a given dataset. Its purpose is to provide information about a dataset or
3383 some larger data holdings to data catalogues, clearinghouses, and users. Metadata are
3384 intended to provide a capability for organizing and maintaining an institution’s
3385 investment in data as well as to provide information for the application and interpretation
3386 of data received through a transfer from an external source (FGDC 1997). Recommended
3387 standards for ecological metadata have been proposed by Michener et al. (1997).
- 3388 **Occurrence Plot Records** — plot records that contain data valuable for ecological and
3389 geographical characterization of vegetation, but which do not contain sufficient data to be
3390 used in quantitative description of an association or alliance (see Classification Plot
3391 Records; also Section 5.3, Appendix 1).
- 3392 **Order** — the level in the NVC hierarchy under division, generally defined by dominant growth
3393 form(tree, shrub, herbaceous; FGDC 1997).

- 3394 **Physiognomy** — the visible structure or outward appearance of a plant community as expressed
3395 by the dominant growth forms, such as their leaf appearance or deciduousness (Fosberg
3396 1961; *c.f.*, structure).
- 3397 **Plant Community** — a group of plant species living together and linked together by their
3398 effects on one another and their responses to the environment they share (modified from
3399 Whittaker 1975). Typically the plant species that co-occur in a plant community show a
3400 definite association or affinity with each other (Kent and Coker 1992).
- 3401 **Plot** — in the context of vegetation classification, an area of defined size and shape that is
3402 intended for characterizing a homogenous occurrence of vegetation (*c.f.*, relevé).
- 3403 **Potential Natural Vegetation** — the vegetation that would become established if successional
3404 sequences were completed without interference by man or natural disturbance under the
3405 present climatic and edaphic conditions (Tüxen 1956; *c.f.*, existing vegetation).
- 3406 **Range of Variation** — the values of an attribute, such as species composition or environmental
3407 parameters, that fall within the upper and lower bounds determined for that attribute. The
3408 range of variation in the floristic composition of a vegetation type may, for example, be
3409 expressed in terms of its beta diversity (*cf.* Wilson and Shmida 1984, McCune et al.
3410 2002), either along an environmental gradient or as the amount of compositional change
3411 in a multidimensional hyperspace.
- 3412 **Relevé** — a record of vegetation intended for characterizing a stand of vegetation having
3413 uniform habitat and relatively homogeneous plant cover, and which is large enough in
3414 area to contain a large proportion of the species typically occurring in the plant
3415 community (Mueller-Dombois and Ellenberg 1974; *c.f.*, plot).
- 3416 **Sampling Method** — the means used to select the locations for plots. (Note that the act of
3417 recording a plot or relevé is often referred to as vegetation sampling, but this is really
3418 vegetation recording; the sampling component occurs in the selection of the specific plot
3419 to be recorded.)
- 3420 **Seral** — a vegetation type (or component species) that is nonclimax; a species or community
3421 demonstrably susceptible to replacement by another species or community (Daubenmire
3422 1978).
- 3423 **Sere** — a continuous sequence of community types that occur in a successional sequence prior
3424 to reaching the climax type.
- 3425 **Site Type** — a qualitative grouping or classification of sites by climate, soil, and habitat
3426 attributes, typically determined by the vegetation present at the site.
- 3427 **Stand** — a spatially continuous unit of vegetation with uniform composition, structure, and
3428 environmental conditions. This term is often used to indicate a particular example of a
3429 plant community.
- 3430 **Stratum** — in this document used synonymously with layer. Elsewhere it can indicate a layer
3431 of vegetation defined by the foliage between two horizontal planes.
- 3432 **Structure (vegetation)** — the spatial pattern of growth forms in a plant community, especially
3433 with regard to their height, abundance, or coverage within the individual layers (Gabriel

- 3434 and Talbot 1984; see also, physiognomy). Elsewhere this term is used more generally to
3435 include all aspects of how communities are assembled.
- 3436 **Subclass** — the level in the NVC classification hierarchy under class (see Figure 1) based on
3437 growth form characteristics (Grossman et al. 1998).
- 3438 **Subclimax** — the stage plant succession immediately preceding the climax stage (Gabriel and
3439 Talbot 1984).
- 3440 **Subgroup** — the level in the NVC classification hierarchy below group (see Figure 1) that
3441 separates “natural or seminatural” from “cultural” vegetation (planted or cultivated;
3442 Grossman et al. 1998).
- 3443 **Taxon-concept** — When used with respect to taxonomic nomenclature, the combination of a
3444 taxon name along with a reference to a circumscribed taxonomic concept (as in “potential
3445 taxon” of Berendsohn (1995) or “assertion” of Pyle (2004)).
- 3446 **Vegetation** — the collective plant cover of an area (FGDC 1997).

3447 **APPENDIX 1**

3448 Required and optimal attributes for classification and occurrence plot records. *Classification*
 3449 *plots* provide data needed to develop and define classified vegetation types (associations and
 3450 alliances). *Occurrence plots* document a less formal observation of a known association or
 3451 alliance at a location. Required fields are those minimally needed to serve as either classification
 3452 or occurrence plots. Optimal fields are those fields that, while not required, reflect best practices
 3453 when recording plots.

3454 Appendix 1 Table Index

- 3455 1. Information that should be included on the form used to record plot data in the field.
- 3456 1.1. Field form information about the plot record.
- 3457 1.2. Field form information about the plot vegetation.
- 3458 1.3. Field form information about the plot location.
- 3459 1.4. Field form information about the plot environment.
- 3460 1.5. Field form information about the plot habitat.
- 3461 2. Information that should be included as metadata.
- 3462 2.1. Metadata about the original field project for which the plot record was collected.
- 3463 2.2. Metadata about the plot and the plot observation.
- 3464 2.3. Metadata about the methods used to collect the field data.
- 3465 2.4. Metadata about the human sources of the field data.
- 3466 2.5. Metadata about references for other sources of plot data.
- 3467 2.6. Metadata about plot record confidentiality and links to publications and sources.
- 3468 3. Information that should be included about each assignment of a field plot to a vegetation type
 3469 or types in the NVC.

3470 For access to an ASCII file of each table as well as more detailed information, see
 3471 <http://www.vegbank.org>.

3472

3473 1. Information that should be included on the form used to record plot data in the field. The
 3474 attribute names derive from the attribute names in the VegBank plot archive (with the exception
 3475 that underscore symbols have been added to improve readability).

3476 1.1. Field form information about the plot record.

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
Author Plot Code	Author's plot number/code, or the original plot number if taken from literature.	Required	Required

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
Author Observation Code	Code or name that the author uses to identify this plot observation. Where a plot has only one observation, this code may equal Author Plot Code.	Required	Optimal
Placement Method	Description of the method used to determine the placement of a plot.	Optimal	Optimal
Observation Start Date	The date of the observation, or the first day if the observation spanned more than one day.	Required	Required
Observation Stop Date	The last day of the observation if the observation spanned more than one day.	Optimal	Optimal
Date Accuracy	Estimated accuracy of the observation date. Accuracy is often low for legacy data. See Table 3, Appendix 2 for a constrained vocabulary.	Required	Optimal

3477

3478

3479

3480

1.2. Field form information about the plot vegetation.

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
Dominant Stratum	Identify the dominant stratum (of the six standard strata)	Optimal	Optimal
Growth Form 1	The predominant growth form.	Optimal	Optimal
Growth Form 2	The second-most predominant growth form.	Optimal	Optimal
Growth Form 3	The third-most predominant growth form	Optimal	Optimal
Growth Form 1 Cover	Total cover of the predominant growth form.	Optimal	Optimal
Growth Form 2 Cover	Total cover of the second-most predominant growth form.	Optimal	Optimal
Growth Form 3 Cover	Total cover of the third-most predominant growth form.	Optimal	Optimal
Basal Area	Total basal area of woody stems in m ² /ha	Optimal	Optimal

The following stratum variables are recorded once for each stratum recognized. While not strictly required, measurements of strata are a best practice. If strata are measured, the first three and last are required

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
Stratum Index	Indices used to represent stratum	Required only if strata are recorded	Optimal
Stratum Name	Name of stratum	Required only if strata are recorded	Optimal
Stratum Description	Description of stratum	Required only if strata are recorded	Optimal
Stratum Height	Average height to the top of the stratum in meters.	Optimal	Optimal
Stratum Base	Average height of the bottom of the stratum in meters.	Optimal	Optimal
Stratum Cover	Total cover of vegetation within the given stratum in percent.	Required only if strata are recorded	Optimal
<i>The following apply for recording plant taxa, with at least one record per taxon, and multiple records when taxa are observed in multiple strata.</i>			
Plant Name	Name of the taxon. For occurrence plots, only dominant taxa are required, whereas for classification plots a comprehensive list of taxa is required.	Required	Required
Plant Reference	Authority followed for taxon (could be entered by taxon, or collectively for the whole plot or as a default where not otherwise specified in the metadata).	Required	Required
Taxon Stratum Cover	Percent cover of taxon in stratum.	Optimal	Optimal
Taxon Cover	Overall cover of the taxon across all strata. For occurrence plots, only dominant taxa are required, whereas for classification plots a comprehensive list of taxa is required.	Required	Required
Taxon Inference Area	This is the area in square meters used to estimate the cover of a given taxon. Generally this should be equal to Taxon Observation Area, but at times this area may be larger or smaller for a specific taxon.	Required	Optimal
Taxon Basal Area	Total basal area of woody stems in m ² /ha for a given taxon, usually for	Optimal	Optimal

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
	those with a tree growth form.		
Taxon Stem Count	The number of stems of a given taxon, usually for those with a tree growth form.	Optimal	Optimal

3481

3482

3483

3484 1.3. Field form information about the plot location (some can be determined after a return to
3485 office, for example, with coordinate conversions).

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
Latitude & Longitude	WGS84 Latitude and Longitude of the plot origin in degrees and decimals following any adjustments, conversions and postprocessing.	Required	Required
Type of Field Coordinates	Coordinates recorded in the field (latitude and longitude with datum, UTM with datum, or alternative geographic projection with units, longitude of center of projection, latitude of center of projection, False easting, False northing, X axis shift, & Y axis shift)	Required	Required
Location Accuracy	Estimated accuracy of the location of the plot. Plot origin has a 95% or greater probability of being within this many meters of the reported location.	Optimal	Required
Location Narrative	Text description that provides information useful for plot relocation.	Optimal	Optimal
Area	Total area of the plot in square meters. If many subplots, this area includes the subplots and the interstitial space.	Required	Optimal
Stand Size	Estimated size of the stand of vegetation in which the plot occurs.	Optimal	Optimal
USGS Quad	U.S. Geological Survey 7.5 minute quadrangle name.	Optimal	Optimal
Ecoregion	Bailey (1995) Ecoregion Section.	Optimal	Optimal
Place name Country	Country of plot location.	Optimal	Optimal
Place Name State/Prov.	State, province, or similar subnational jurisdiction.	Optimal	Optimal
Place Name Canton	County, township, parish, or similar local jurisdiction.	Optimal	Optimal

3486

3487

3488 1.4. Field form information about the plot environment.

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
Elevation	The elevation of the plot origin in meters above sea level.	Optimal	Optimal
Elevation Accuracy	The accuracy of the elevation in percentage of the elevation reported.	Optimal	Optimal
Slope Aspect	Representative azimuth of slope gradient (0-360 degrees; -1 if too flat to determine; -2 if too irregular to determine).	Optimal	Optimal
Slope Gradient	Representative inclination of slope in degrees; if too irregular to determine, = -1.	Optimal	Optimal
Topographic Position	Position of the plot on land surface (e.g., summit, shoulder, upper slope, middle slope, lower slope, toeslope, no slope, channel bed, dune swale, pond). See Table 19, Appendix 2 for a constrained vocabulary.	Optimal	Optimal
Landform	Landform type. See U.S. Department of Agriculture, Natural Resources Conservation Service, 2002. National Soil Survey Handbook, Part 629 Exhibit 1, Parts I.A & I.B. (Online at http://soils.usda.gov/technical/handbook/contents/part629p2.html#ex1) for a list of landform terms.	Optimal	Optimal
Geology	Surface geology type. See Table 18, Appendix 2 for a constrained vocabulary.	Optimal	Optimal
Hydrologic Regime	Hydrologic regime based on, frequency and duration of flooding) (Cowardin et al. 1979). See Table 8, Appendix 2 for a constrained vocabulary.	Optimal	Optimal
Soil Moisture Regime	Soil moisture regime, such as xeric, mesic, hygric, hydric. See Table 11, Appendix 2 for a constrained vocabulary.	Optimal	Optimal
Soil Drainage	Drainage of the site (generally consistent with USDA classes). See Table 10, Appendix 2 for a constrained vocabulary.	Optimal	Optimal

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
Water Salinity	How saline is the water, if a flooded community. See Table 13, Appendix 2 for a constrained vocabulary.	Optimal	Optimal
Water Depth	For wetland, aquatic or marine vegetation, the water depth in m	Optimal	Optimal
Shore Distance	For aquatic or marine vegetation, the closest distance to shore in m	Optimal	Optimal
Soil Depth	Median depth to bedrock or permafrost in m (usually from averaging multiple probe readings).	Optimal	Optimal
Organic Depth	Depth of the surficial organic layer, where present, in centimeters.	Optimal	Optimal
Soil Cover: Percent Bedrock	Percent of surface that is exposed bedrock.	Optimal	Optimal
Soil Cover: Percent Rock & Gravel	Percent of surface that is exposed rock and gravel.	Optimal	Optimal
Soil Cover: Percent Dead Wood	Percent of surface that is wood.	Optimal	Optimal
Soil Cover: Percent Litter	Percent of surface that is litter.	Optimal	Optimal
Soil Cover: Percent Bare Soil	Percent of surface that is bare mineral soil.	Optimal	Optimal
Soil Cover: Percent Water	Percent of surface that is water.	Optimal	Optimal
Soil Taxon	Name of soil type.	Optimal	Optimal
Soil Taxon Source	Source of soil type.	Optimal	Optimal
Soil Cover: Percent Live Stems	Percent of surface that is occupied by live plant stems.	Optimal	Optimal
Soil Cover: Percent Nonvascular	Percent of surface that is occupied by nonvascular plants (moss, lichen, liverwort, algae).	Optimal	Optimal

3489

3490

3491 1.5. Field form information about the plot habitat.

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
Observation Narrative	Additional unstructured observations useful for understanding the ecological attributes and significance of the plot observations.	Optimal	Optimal
Landscape Narrative	Unstructured observations on the landscape context of the observed	Optimal	Optimal

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
	plot.		
Homogeneity	Homogeneity of the community (e.g., homogeneous, compositional trend across plot, conspicuous inclusions, irregular mosaic or pattern)? See Table 7, Appendix 2 for a constrained vocabulary.	Optimal	Optimal
Phenological Aspect	Season expression of the community (e.g., typical growing season, vernal, aestival, wet, autumnal, winter, dry, irregular ephemerals present). See Table 9, Appendix 2 for a constrained vocabulary.	Optimal	Optimal
Representativeness	Narrative description of how representative the plot is of the stand.	Optimal	Optimal
Stand Maturity	Assess maturity of stand (e.g., young, mature but even-aged, old-growth, etc.) See Table 12, Appendix 2 for a constrained vocabulary.	Optimal	Optimal
Successional Status	Description of the assumed successional status of the plot.	Optimal	Optimal
<i>The following should be repeated once for each type of disturbance reported</i>			
Disturbance Type	The type of disturbance being reported. Repeat this field as many times as necessary where there is more than one type of disturbance	Optimal	Optimal
Disturbance Intensity	Intensity or degree of disturbance. Values are: High, Medium, Low, None.	Optimal	Optimal
Disturbance Age	Estimated time in years since the disturbance event	Optimal	Optimal
Disturbance Extent	Percent of the plot that experienced the event	Optimal	Optimal
Disturbance Comment	Text description of details of the disturbance and its impact on the vegetation. Repeat this field as many times as necessary where there is more than one type of disturbance	Optimal	Optimal

3492

3493

3494 2. Information that should be included as metadata.

3495 2.1. Metadata about the original field project for which the plot record was collected.

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
Project Name	Project name as defined by the principal investigator.	Optimal	Optimal
Project Description	Short description of the project including the original purpose for conducting the project. This can be viewed as the project abstract plus supporting metadata.	Optimal	Optimal
Start Date	Project start date.	Optimal	Optimal
Stop Date	Project stop date.	Optimal	Optimal

3496

3497

3498 2.2. Metadata about the plot and the plot observation.

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
Layout Narrative	Text description of and the rationale for the layout of the plot.	Optimal	Optimal
Method Narrative	Additional metadata helpful for understanding how the data were collected during the observation event.	Optimal	Optimal
Plot Type	Indicate if information is recorded from the entire plot or from subplots. If from subplots indicate how the subplots were configured: contiguous, regular, random, or haphazard (see Appendix 2, Table 2).	Required	Optimal
Taxon Observation Area	The total surface area (in square meters) used for cover estimates and for which a complete species list is provided. If subplots were used, this would be the total area of the subplots without interstitial space.	Required	Optimal
Cover Dispersion	Indication of how cover values for the total taxon list were collected; i.e., from one contiguous area or dispersed subplots (e.g., contiguous, dispersed-regular, dispersed-random)?	Required	Optimal
Original Data	Location where the hard data reside and any access instructions.	Optimal	Optimal
Effort Level	Effort spent making the observations as estimated by the party that submitted the data. Values are: very	Optimal	Optimal

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
	thorough; accurate; hurried or incomplete.		
Quality of the Floristic Observation	Subjective assessment of the quality of taxonomic resolution made by the party that submitted the plot. For example, what percent of all taxa were identified to species level; how thorough was the search? See Table 21, Appendix 2 for values and their definitions.	Optimal	Optimal
Quality of the Bryophyte Observation	Subjective estimate of the quality of taxonomic resolution made by the party that submitted the plot. See Table 21 of Appendix 2 for values and their definitions.	Optimal	Optimal
Quality of the Lichen Observation	Subjective estimate of the quality of taxonomic resolution made by the party that submitted the plot. See Table 21 of Appendix 2 for values and their definitions.	Optimal	Optimal
Vouchers Collected	Indicate if voucher specimens were collected and, if so, where they were deposited	Optimal	Optimal

3499
3500

3501 2.3. Metadata about the methods used to collect the field data. If you used a standard stratum
3502 method, it should be identified here. Vertical strata used for recording taxon cover must be
3503 defined in terms of their upper and lower limits with this information reported in table 1.2.
3504 Cover class scales must be defined in terms of their minimum, maximum, and representative
3505 cover in percent. You may either use an established, named cover scale which you report in
3506 field 3, or you document a new scale through repeated entries in fields 4-8.

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
Stratum Method Name	Name of the stratum method. Any appropriate label (e.g., NVC, Braun-Blanquet, NatureServe, North Carolina Vegetation Survey #1, etc..).	Required only if strata are recorded	Optimal
Stratum Method Description	This field describes the general methods used for strata.	Required only if strata are recorded	Optimal
Cover Type	Name of the cover class method (e.g., Braun-Blanquet, Barkman, Domin, Daubenmire, North Carolina	Required	Optimal

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
	Vegetation Survey, etc.).		
Cover Code	The name or label used in the cover class scale for this specific cover class.	Required	Optimal
Cover Code Upper Limit	Upper limit, in percent, associated with the specific cover code.	Required	Optimal
Cover Code Lower Limit	This is the lower limit, in percent, associated with a specific Cover Code.	Required	Optimal
Cover Percent	A middle value (usually mean or geometric mean) between the Upper Limit and Lower Limit stored by the database for each taxon observation and used for all cover class conversions and interpretations. This is assigned by the author of the cover class schema.	Optimal	Optimal
Index Description	Description of the specific cover class. This is particularly helpful in the case that there is no numeric value that can be applied.	Optimal	Optimal

3507

3508 2.4. Metadata about the human sources of the field data.

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
Given Name	One's first name.	Required	Required
Middle Name	One's middle name or initial, if any.	Optimal	Optimal
Surname	Name shared in common to identify the members of a family, as distinguished from each member's given name.	Required	Required
Organization Name	Name of an organization.	Optimal	Optimal
Current Name	Recursive foreign key to current name of this party.	Optimal	Optimal
Email	email address	Optimal	Optimal
Address Start Date	The first date on which the address/organization information was applied.	Required	Required
Delivery Point	Address line for the location (street name, box number, suite).	Optimal	Optimal
City	City of the location.	Optimal	Optimal
Administrative Area	State, province of the location.	Optimal	Optimal
Postal Code	Zip code or other postal code.	Optimal	Optimal

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
Country	Country of the physical address.	Optimal	Optimal
<i>The following can be repeated an indefinite number of times per person</i>			
Role: Plot submitter	Name of the person submitting the analysis.	Required	Required
Role: Plot Primary Field Observer	Name of the person who made the field observation (e.g., PI, technician, volunteer, etc.).	Required	Required
Role: Plot Author	Name of the author of the plot record.	Required	Required
Role: Project PI	Name of the field plot inventory project's principal investigator.	Optimal	Optimal
Role: Other	Report other roles as appropriate.	Optimal	Optimal

3509

3510

3511

2.5 Metadata about references for other sources of plot data. These fields are used when plot observations are taken from published literature sources.

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
Authors	Name of authors if plot record is taken from published work.	Required	Required
Title	Title of publication, if plot record is taken from published work.	Required	Required
Publication Date	Date of publication, if plot record is taken from published work.	Required	Required
Edition	Edition of publication if applicable, and if plot record is taken from published work.	Required	Required
Series Name	Name of publication series, if applicable, and if plot record is taken from published work.	Required	Required
Page	Page number of publication, if plot record is taken from published work.	Required	Required
Table Cited	Table number or code, if applicable and if plot record is taken from published work.	Required	Required
Plot Cited	Original plot name, if plot record is taken from published work.	Required	Required
ISBN	International Standard Book Number (ISBN), if applicable, and if plot record is taken from published book.	Optimal	Optimal
ISSN	International Standard Serial Number, if applicable.	Optimal	Optimal

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
Short Name	Provides a concise or abbreviated name that describes the resource that is being documented.	Optimal	Optimal
Citation Type	Describes the type of reference this generic type is being used to represent. Examples: book, journal article, webpage.	Required	Required
Title	The formal title given to the work by its author or publisher.	Required	Required
Title Superior	A second, higher order title where appropriate, which in the case of a reference to a chapter is the Book title, and in the case of a Conference Presentation is the Name of the Conference.	Optimal	Optimal
Pub Date	Represents the date that the reference was published.	Required	Required
Access Date	The date the reference being referenced was accessed. This is useful if the reference is could be changed after formal publication, such as websites or databases.	Required	Required
Conference Date	The date the conference was held.	Required	Required
Volume	The volume of the journal in which the article appears.	Required	Required
Issue	The issue of the journal in which the article appears.	Required	Required
Page Range	The beginning and ending pages of the journal article that is being documented.	Required	Required
Total Pages	The total number of pages in the book that is being described.	Required	Required
Publisher	The organization that physically put together the report and publishes it.	Required	Required
Publication Place	The location at which the work was published. This is usually the name of the city in which the publishing house produced the work.	Required	Required
ISBN	The ISBN, or International Standard Book Number assigned to this literature reference.	Required	Required
Edition	The edition of the generic reference type that is being described.	Required	Required

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
Number Of Volumes	Number of volumes in a collection	Required	Required
Chapter Number	The chapter number of the chapter of a book that is being described.	Required	Required
Report Number	The unique identification number that has been issued by the report institution for the report being described.	Required	Required
Communication Type	The type of personal communication. Could be an email, letter, memo, transcript of conversation either hardcopy or online.	Optimal	Optimal
Degree	The name or degree level for which the thesis was completed.	Optimal	Optimal
URL	A URL (Uniform Resource Locator) from which this reference can be downloaded or additional information can be obtained.	Optimal	Optimal
DOI	A Digital Object Identifier - a digital identifier for any object of intellectual property. A DOI provides a means of persistently identifying a piece of intellectual property on a digital network and associating it with related current data.	Optimal	Optimal
Additional Info	Any information that is not characterized by the other reference metadata fields. Example: Copyright 2001, Robert Warner	Optimal	Optimal
Journal	The name of the publication in which the article was published. Example(s): Ecology, New York Times, Harper's, Canadian Journal of Botany/Revue Canadienne de Botanique, The Journal of the American Medical Association	Required	Required
ISSN	The ISSN, or International Standard Serial Number assigned to this literature reference. Example(s): ISSN 1234-5679	Required	Required
Abbreviation	Standard abbreviation or shorter name of the journal. Example(s): Can. J. Bot./Rev. Can. Bot., JAMA	Optimal	Optimal

The following can be repeated an indefinite number of times for each alternate identifier

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
<i>used to describe the reference.</i>			
System	The data management system within which a plot identifier is found. This is typically a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) that indicates a data management system. All identifiers that share a system must be unique. In other words, if the same identifier is used in two locations with identical systems, then by definition the objects at which they point are in fact the same object. Example: http://metacat.somewhere.org/svc/mc/	Optimal	Optimal
Identifier	An additional, secondary identifier for this reference. The primary identifier belongs in the reference table, but additional identifiers that are used to label this reference, possibly from different data management systems, can be listed here. Example: VCR3465	Optimal	Optimal
<i>The following can be repeated an indefinite number of times for each contributor to the reference (e.g. author, editor).</i>			
Role Type	The role the party played with respect to the reference contribution. Some potential roles include technician, reviewer, principal investigator, and many others.	Required	Required
Order	Numerical order in which this contributor's name should be in the order of contributors, if applicable. Examples: 1 [for the first author], 2, [for the second author], etc.	Required	Required
Type	The type of Party that a given record refers to, usually a person or institution.	Required	Required
Position Name	This field is intended to be used to indicate the position occupied by a person within an institution. Position Name is needed for consistency in cases where the associated person that	Optimal	Optimal

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
	holds the role changes frequently.		
Salutation	The salutation field is used in addressing an individual with a particular title, such as Dr., Ms., Mrs., Mr., etc.	Optimal	Optimal
Given Name	The given name field is used for all names except the surname of the individual. Examples: Jo, Jo R., Jo R.W., John Robert Peter	Required	Required
Surname	The surname field is used for the last name of the individual.	Required	Required
Suffix	A suffix or suffix abbreviation that follows a name. Examples: Jr., Senior, III, etc.	Optimal	Optimal
Organization Name	The full name of the organization that is associated with the reference contribution. This field is intended to describe which institution or overall organization is associated with the resource being described.	Optimal	Optimal
Current Party	A link to the record of the current name of the party, if different from the name used in this record.	Optimal	Optimal

3512

3513

3514

2.6. Metadata about plot record confidentiality and links to publications and sources.

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
Confidentiality Status	Are the data to be considered confidential? 0=no, 1= 1km radius, 2=10km radius, 3=100km radius, 4=location embargo, 5=public embargo on all plot data, 6=full embargo on all plot data.	Optimal	Optimal
Confidentiality Reason	The reason for confidentiality. This field should not be open to public view. Reasons might include specific rare species, ownership, prepublication embargo, or many other reasons.	Optimal	Optimal

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
Classification Publication ID	Link to a publication wherein the observation was classified.	Optimal	Optimal
Community Authority ID	Link to the reference from which information on the community concept was obtained during the classification event.	Optimal	Optimal

3515

3516

3517 3. Information that should be included about each assignment of a field plot to a vegetation type
 3518 in the NVC, or other party-specific classification. Assignment, per se, of a plot to a
 3519 classification type is not required.

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
Classification Start Date	Start date for the application of a vegetation class to a plot observation by one or more parties.	Required	Required
Inspection	Was the classification informed by simple inspection of data (Yes/No)?	Optimal	Optimal
Table Analysis	Was the classification informed by inspection of floristic composition tables (Yes/No)?	Optimal	Optimal
Multivariate Analysis	Was the classification informed by use of multivariate numerical tools (Yes/No)?	Optimal	Optimal
Expert System	Was the classification informed by use of automated expert system (Yes/No)?	Optimal	Optimal
Classifier	Name of person who classified the plot – this should link to a person included in the human resources metadata table.	Required	Required
Interpretation Date	The date that the interpretation was made.	Required if known	Required
Interpretation Type	Categories for the interpretation (e.g., author, computer-generated, simplified for comparative analysis, correction, finer resolution).	Required if known	Required
Original Interpretation	Does this interpretation correspond to the original interpretation of the plot author, as best as can be determined. There is no requirement that the authority match the authority of the author; only that the concepts are	Required if known	Required

Attribute Name	Attribute Definition	Classification Plots	Occurrence Plots
	synonymous.		
Current Interpretation	This interpretation is the most accurate and precise interpretation currently available.	Required if known	Required
<i>The following may be repeated for each community type associated with a plot during a classification event</i>			
Community Name	Name of the community	Required if known	Required
Community Reference	Reference wherein the above name is defined	Required if known	Required
Classification Fit	Indicates the degree of fit with the community concept being assigned (e.g., fits concept well, fits but not typical, possible fit, just outside concept). See Table 23 of Appendix 2 for standard classification fit categories and codes.	Optimal	Optimal
Classification Confidence	Indicates the degree of confidence of the interpreter (s) in the interpretation made. This can reflect the level of familiarity with the classification or the sufficiency of information about the plot (e.g., high, moderate, low).	Optimal	Optimal

3521 **APPENDIX 2**

3522 Recommended Constrained Vocabularies. The following lists are vocabularies that should be
3523 used when recording plot information that describes a condition of the following subjects. These
3524 standardized vocabularies are used in database “picklists” and greatly facilitate standardized data
3525 types and information exchange.

3526 Table Index

- 3527 1. Disturbance Types
- 3528 2. Plot Observation Types
- 3529 3. Accuracy of Time of Day
- 3530 4. Accuracy of Date
- 3531 5. Vegetation Stratum Types
- 3532 6. Growth Form Types
- 3533 7. Homogeneity of Plot
- 3534 8. Hydrologic Regime of Plot
- 3535 9. Phenologic Aspect of Plot
- 3536 10. Soil Drainage of Plot
- 3537 11. Soil Moisture Regime of Plot
- 3538 12. Stand Maturity
- 3539 13. Water Salinity
- 3540 14. Rock Types
- 3541 15. Placement Method of Plot
- 3542 16. Plot Shape
- 3543 17. Stand Size
- 3544 18. Surficial Geologic Material
- 3545 19. Topographic Position
- 3546 20. Soil Texture
- 3547 21. Quality of the Floristic Observation
- 3548 22. Plot Confidentiality Codes
- 3549 23. Classification Fit

3550

Appendix 2, Table 1.

Disturbance Types
Avalanche and snow
Cryoturbation
Cultivation
Erosion
Fire suppression
Fire, canopy
Fire, ground
Fire, general
Flood
Grazing, domestic stock
Grazing, native ungulates
Herbicide or chemical
Herbivory, vertebrates
Hydrologic alteration
Ice
Invertebrate caused
Mass land movement (landslides)
Mowing
Other disturbance
Plant disease
Roads and vehicular traffic
Salt spray
Tidal
Timber harvest, general
Timber harvest, clearcut
Timber harvest, selective
Trampling and trails
Wind, chronic
Wind event

3551

3552

Appendix 2, Table 2

Plot Observation Types	Descriptions of Plot Observation Types
Entire	Cover based on observation of an entire plot consisting of a single contiguous area of land.
Subplot-contiguous	Cover based on observation of a single contiguous area of land of less spatial extent than the entire plot.
Subplot-regular	Cover based on observation of multiple subplots arranged in a regular pattern within the overall plot.
Subplot-random	Cover based on observation of multiple randomly dispersed within the overall plot.
Subplot-haphazard	Cover based on observation of multiple subplots haphazardly arranged within the overall plot.

3553

Appendix 2, Table 3

Accuracy of Time of Day	Descriptions of Time of Day Accuracy Categories
One minute	Time of day is accurate to within one minute
One hour	Time of day is accurate to within one hour
Quarter-day	Time of day is accurate to within one quarter-day (e.g., during morning, during afternoon)
Half day	Time of day is accurate to within one half-day (e.g., between 00:00 and 11:59, or between 12:00 and 23:59)

3554

Appendix 2, Table 4

Accuracy of Date	Descriptions of Date Accuracy Categories
One day	Date accurate to within one day
One week	Date accurate to within one week
One month	Date accurate to within one month
Three months	Date accurate to within three months
One year	Date accurate to within one year
Three years	Date accurate to within three years
Ten years	Date accurate to within ten years
Greater than ten years	Date accurate to within more than ten years

3555

3556

Appendix 2, Table 5 NOTE: Vegetation strata are not to be confused with life forms.

Vegetation Stratum Types	Descriptions of Vegetation Stratum Types
Tree	Includes tall trees (single-stemmed woody plants, generally more than 5 m in height or greater at maturity under optimal growing conditions). Very tall shrubs with tree-like form may also be included here, as may other life forms, such as lianas and epiphytes, and their contribution to the stratum can be further specified using the “life form” field.
Shrub	Includes shrubs (multiple-stemmed woody plants, generally less than 5 m in height at maturity under optimal growing conditions) and by shorter trees (saplings). As with the tree stratum, other life forms present in this stratum may also be included (however, herbaceous life forms should be excluded, as their stems often die back annually and do not have as consistent a height as woody life forms). Where dwarf-shrubs (i.e. shrubs < 0.5 m) form a distinct stratum (either as part of a series of strata, as in a forest, or as the top stratum of more open vegetation, such as tundra or xeric shrublands), they should be treated as a low version of the shrub stratum (or short shrub substratum). In many vegetation types, dwarf-shrubs may simply occur as one life form component of the herb stratum (see below).
Herb	Also referred to as field stratum. Includes herbs (plants without woody stems and often dying back annually), often in association with low creeping semi-shrubs, dwarf-shrubs, vines, and non-woody brambles (such as raspberries), as well as tree or shrub seedlings.
Moss	Also referred to as nonvascular, bryoid, or ground stratum. Defined entirely by mosses, lichens, liverworts, and alga. Ground-creeping vines, prostrate shrubs and herbs should be treated in the herb stratum. Where herbs are entirely absent, it is still possible to recognize this stratum if other very low woody or semi-woody life forms are present.
Floating	Includes rooted or drifting plants that float on the water surface (e.g., duckweed, water-lily).
Submerged	Includes rooted or drifting plants that by-and-large remain submerged in the water column or on the aquatic bottom (e.g., pondweed). The focus is on the overall strata arrangement of these aquatic plants. Note that emergent plants life forms in a wetland should be placed in the strata listed above (e.g., cattail or sedges would be placed in the herb stratum, whereas the duckweed would be in the floating aquatic stratum).

3557

3558

Appendix 2, Table 6

Growth Form Types
Alga
Aquatic herb
Bamboo
Broad-leaved deciduous shrub
Broad-leaved deciduous tree
Broad-leaved evergreen shrub
Broad-leaved evergreen tree
Bryophyte
Dwarf-shrub
Epiphyte
Evergreen sclerophyllous shrub
Evergreen sclerophyllous tree
Fern or fern allie
Forb
Graminoid
Lichen
Needle-leaved shrub
Needle-leaved tree
Palm shrub
Palm tree
Semi-shrub
Succulent forb
Succulent shrub
Succulent tree
Thorn shrub
Thorn tree
Tree fern
Vine/Liana (woody climbers or vines)

3559

3560

3561

Appendix 2, Table 7

Homogeneity of Plot
Homogeneous
Compositional trend across plot
Conspicuous inclusions
Irregular or pattern mosaic

3562

3563

Appendix 2, Table 8

Hydrologic Regime of Plot
Semipermanently flooded
Seasonally flooded
Saturated
Seasonally saturated
Temporarily flooded
Intermittently flooded
Permanently flooded
Permanently flooded - tidal
Tidally flooded
Wind-tidally flooded
Irregularly flooded
Irregularly exposed
Upland
Unknown

3564

Appendix 2, Table 9

Phenologic Aspect of Plot
Typical growing season
Vernal
Early wet season
Aestival
Wet season
Autumnal
Late wet season
Winter
Dry season
Irregular ephemeral phase

3565

Appendix 2, Table 10

Soil Drainage of Plot
Excessively drained
Somewhat excessively drained
Well drained
Moderately well drained
Somewhat poorly drained
Poorly drained
Very poorly drained

3566

3567

Appendix 2, Table 11

Soil Moisture Regime of Plot
Very xeric
Xeric
Subxeric
Submesic
Mesic
Subhygric
Hygric
Subhydric
Hydric

3568

Appendix 2, Table 12

Stand Maturity
Young, regenerative
Even-age, aggrading
Mature, even-age
Transition, breakup
Old growth or senescent, all-age
Uneven-age

3569

Appendix 2, Table 13

Water Salinity	Description of Water Salinity
Saltwater	greater than 30 ppt
Brackish	0.5 to 30 ppt
Freshwater	less than 0.5 ppt

3570

3571

Appendix 2, Table 14

Rock Types. For definitions of these terms see Jackson 1997, or USDA, NRCS 2002.		
`a`a lava	hornfels	quartz-diorite
amphibolite	igneous, unspecified	quartz-monzonite
andesite	ignimbrite	quartzite
anorthosite	iron-manganese concretions	rhyolite
arenite	iron-manganese nodules	sandstone, calcareous
argillite	ironstone nodules	sandstone, glauconitic
arkose	lapilli	sandstone, unspecified
basalt	latite	schist, mica
block lava	limestone, arenaceous	schist, unspecified
breccia, non-volcanic	limestone, argillaceous	scoria
breccia, non-volcanic, acidic	limestone, cherty	sedimentary, unspecified
breccia, non-volcanic, basic	limestone, phosphatic	serpentinite
calcrete (caliche)	limestone, unspecified	shale, acid
carbonate concretions	marble	shale, calcareous
carbonate nodules	metaconglomerate	shale, clayey
carbonate rock, unspecified	metamorphic, foliated	shale, unspecified
chalk	metamorphic, unspecified	shell fragments
charcoal	metaquartzite	silica concretions
chert	metasedimentary, unspecified	siltstone, calcareous
cinders	metavolcanics	siltstone, unspecified
claystone	migmatite	slate
coal	mixed	soapstone
conglomerate, calcareous	monzonite	syenite
conglomerate, unspecified	mudstone	syenodiorite
dacite	mylonite	tachylite
diabase	obsidian	tonalite
diorite	orthoquartzite	trachyte
dolomite (dolostone)	ortstein fragments	travertine
durinodes	pahoehoe lava	tufa
duripan fragments	peridotite	tuff breccia
gabbro	petrocalcic fragments	tuff, acidic
gibbsite concretions	petroferric fragments	tuff, basic
gibbsite nodules	petrogypsic fragments	tuff, unspecified
gneiss	phyllite	tuff, welded
granite	pillow lava	ultramafic, unspecified
granodiorite	plinthite nodules	volcanic bombs
granofels	porcellanite	volcanic breccia, acidic
granulite	pumice	volcanic breccia, basic
graywacke	pyroclastic (consolidated)	volcanic breccia, unspecified
greenstone	pyroxenite	volcanic, unspecified
gypsum	quartz	wood

3572

Appendix 2, Table 15

Placement Method of Plot
Regular
Random
Stratified random
Transect component
Representative
Capture specific feature

3573

Appendix 2, Table 16

Plot Shape
Rectangular
Square
Circle
Transect/Strip
Plotless
Diffuse
Other

3574

Appendix 2, Table 17

Stand Size	Descriptions of Stand Sizes
Very Extensive	greater than 1000x plot size
Extensive	greater than 100x plot size
Large	10-100x plot size
Small	3-10x plot size
Very small	1-3x plot size
Inclusion	less than 1x plot size

3575

3576

Appendix 2, Table 18

Surficial Geologic Material
Residual Material: Bedrock
Residual Material: Disintegrated Rock
Residual Material: Deeply Weathered Rock
Glacial Deposits: Undifferentiated glacial deposit
Glacial Deposits: Till
Glacial Deposits: Moraine
Glacial Deposits: Bedrock and till
Glacial Deposits: Glacial-fluvial deposits (outwash)
Glacial Deposits: Deltaic deposits
Alluvial Deposits: Floodplain
Alluvial Deposits: Alluvial Fan
Alluvial Deposits: Deltas
Marine and Lacustrine Deposits: Unconsolidated Sediments
Marine and Lacustrine Deposits: Coarse sediments
Marine and Lacustrine Deposits: Fine-grained sediments
Organic Deposits: Peat
Organic Deposits: Muck
Slope and Modified Deposits: Talus and scree slopes
Slope and Modified Deposits: Colluvial
Slope and Modified Deposits: Solifluction, landslide
Aeolian Deposits: Dunes
Aeolian Deposits: Aeolian sand flats and cover sands
Aeolian Deposits: Loess deposits
Aeolian Deposits: Volcanic Ash
Chemical Deposits: Evaporites and Precipitates
Other
Variable

3577

3578

Appendix 2, Table 19

Topographic Position	Descriptions of Topographic Positions
Interfluve	crest, summit, ridge
High slope	shoulder slope, upper slope, convex creep slope
High level	mesa, high flat
Midslope	transportational midslope, middle slope
Backslope	dipslope
Step in slope	ledge, terracette
Lowslope	lower slope, foot slope, colluvial footslope
Toeslope	alluvial toeslope
Low level	terrace, low flat
Channel wall	bank
Channel bed	narrow valley bottom, gully arroyo
Basin floor	depression

3579

3580
3581

Appendix 2, Table 20

Soil Texture	Descriptors of Soils Texture Terms			
	General Descriptor	Texture Group	Texture Class	Texture Subclass
Sand	coarse-textured	Sandy soils	Sands	Sand
Coarse Sand	coarse-textured	Sandy soils	Sands	Coarse Sand
Fine Sand	coarse-textured	Sandy soils	Sands	Fine Sand
Very Fine Sand	coarse-textured	Sandy soils	Sands	Very Fine Sand
Unspecified Sand	coarse-textured	Sandy soils	Sands	unspecified
Loamy Coarse Sand	coarse-textured	Sandy soils	Loamy Sands	Loamy Coarse Sand
Loamy Sand	coarse-textured	Sandy soils	Loamy Sands	Loamy Sand
Loamy Fine Sand	coarse-textured	Sandy soils	Loamy Sands	Loamy Fine Sand
Loamy Very Fine Sand	coarse-textured	Sandy soils	Loamy Sands	Loamy Very Fine Sand
Unspecified Loamy Sands	coarse-textured	Sandy soils	Loamy Sands	unspecified
Loam	medium-textured	Loamy soils	Loam	Loam
Coarse Sandy Loam	moderately coarse-textured	Loamy soils	Sandy Loams	Coarse Sandy Loam
Sandy Loam	moderately coarse-textured	Loamy soils	Sandy Loams	Sandy Loam
Fine Sandy Loam	moderately coarse-textured	Loamy soils	Sandy Loams	Fine Sandy Loam
Very Fine Sandy Loam	medium-textured	Loamy soils	Sandy Loams	Very Fine Sandy Loam
Unspecified Sandy Loams	moderately coarse-textured to medium-textured	Loamy soils	Sandy Loams	unspecified
Silt Loam	medium-textured	Loamy soils	Silt Loam	Silt Loam
Silt	medium-textured	Loamy soils	Silt	Silt
Sandy Clay Loam	moderately fine-textured	Loamy soils	Sandy Clay Loam	Sandy Clay Loam
Clay Loam	moderately fine-textured	Loamy soils	Clay Loam	Clay Loam
Silty Clay Loam	moderately fine-textured	Loamy soils	Silty Clay Loam	Silty Clay Loam
Sandy Clay	fine-textured	Clayey soils	Sandy Clay	Sandy Clay
Silty Clay	fine-textured	Clayey soils	Silty Clay	Silty Clay
Clay	fine-textured	Clayey soils	Clay	Clay

3582

Appendix 2, Table 21

Quality of the Floristic Observation	Descriptions of Quality of Floristic Observation Values
Highest	At least 95% of all taxa were identified to species level; search was thorough.
High	Between 85% and 95% of all taxa were identified to species level; search was thorough.
High but Incomplete	At least 85% of all taxa were identified to species level; search was not so thorough.
Moderate	Between 70% and 85% of all taxa were identified to species level; search was thorough.
Moderate but Incomplete	Between 70% and 85% of all taxa were identified to species level; search was not so thorough.
Low	Less than 70% of all taxa were identified to species level.

3583

Appendix 2, Table 22.

Confidentiality Codes	Descriptions of Confidentiality Codes
1	Not confidential
2	Confidential, locality generalized to 1 km radius
3	Confidential, locality generalized to 10 km radius
4	Confidential, locality generalized to 100 km radius
5	Confidential, locality embargoed entirely
6	Confidential, all plot data embargoed

3584

Appendix 2, Table 23.

Classification Fit Codes	Descriptions of Classification Fit Codes
1	Plot fits concept well
2	Plot fits, but is not typical.
3	Plot possibly fits the type.
4	Plot is just outside the concept of the type.

3585 **APPENDIX 3**

3586 An example of the description of a floristic association.

3587 **OVERVIEW:**

3588 **Names:**

3589 Name: *Sporobolus heterolepis* - *Schizachyrium scoparium* - (*Carex scirpoidea*) /
3590 (*Juniperus horizontalis*) Herbaceous Association.

3591 Name, translated: Prairie Dropseed - Little Bluestem - (Scirpus-like Sedge) / (Creeping
3592 Juniper) Herbaceous Vegetation

3593 Common Name: Little Bluestem Alvar Grassland

3594 **Identifier:** C EGL005234

3595 **Unit:** ASSOCIATION

3596 **Placement in Hierarchy:**

3597 CLASS: V. Herbaceous

3598 FORMATION: V.A.5.N.c. Medium-tall sod temperate or subpolar grassland

3599 ALLIANCE: V.A.5.N.c.41 SPOROBOLUS HETEROLEPIS - (DESCHAMPSIA
3600 CAESPITOSA, SCHIZACHYRIUM SCOPARIUM) HERBACEOUS ALLIANCE

3601 **Summary:** The little bluestem alvar grassland type is found primarily in the upper Great
3602 Lakes region of the United States and Canada, in northern Michigan and southern Ontario. These
3603 grasslands occur on very shallow, patchy soils (usually less than 20 cm deep, averaging about 6
3604 cm deep) on flat alkaline limestone and dolostone outcrops (pavements). This community often
3605 has a characteristic soil moisture regime of alternating wet and dry periods. The vegetation is
3606 dominated by grasses and sedges, which typically have at least 45% cover. Characteristic species
3607 of the grassland are *Sporobolus heterolepis*, *Schizachyrium scoparium*, *Juniperus horizontalis*,
3608 *Carex scirpoidea*, *Deschampsia caespitosa*, *Packera paupercula* (= *Senecio pauperculus*), and
3609 *Carex crawei*. There is usually less than 10% cover of shrubs over 0.5 m tall; however there may
3610 be as much as 50% cover of dwarf-shrubs (under 0.5 m tall) especially *Juniperus horizontalis*.
3611 Less than 50% of the ground surface is exposed bedrock (including bedrock covered with
3612 nonvascular plants: lichens, mosses, algae).

3613 **Classification Comments:** The most commonly associated alvar communities that
 3614 occur with this community in a landscape mosaic are *Juniperus horizontalis* - *Dasiphora*
 3615 *fruticosa* ssp. *floribunda* / *Schizachyrium scoparium* - *Carex richardsonii* Dwarf-shrubland
 3616 (Creeping Juniper - Shrubby-cinquefoil Alvar Pavement Shrubland; C EGL005236),
 3617 *Deschampsia caespitosa* - (*Sporobolus heterolepis*, *Schizachyrium scoparium*) - *Carex crawei* -
 3618 *Packera paupercula* Herbaceous Vegetation (Tufted Hairgrass Wet Alvar
 3619 Grassland; C EGL005110), *Tortella tortuosa* - *Cladonia pocillum* - *Placynthium* spp. Sparse
 3620 Vegetation (Alvar Nonvascular Pavement; C EGL005192) and, *Thuja occidentalis* - *Pinus*
 3621 *banksiana* / *Dasiphora fruticosa* ssp. *floribunda* / *Clinopodium arkansanum* Wooded
 3622 Herbaceous Vegetation (White-cedar - Jack Pine / Shrubby-cinquefoil Alvar Savanna;
 3623 C EGL005132) (Reschke et al. 1998).

3624 **Rational for nominal species:** *Sporobolus heterolepis* and *Schizachyrium scoparium* are
 3625 dominants. *Carex scirpoidea* and *Juniperus horizontalis* are constants (>60% constancy) in the
 3626 type. *Sporobolus heterolepis*, *Carex scirpoidea* and *Deschampsia caespitosa* are differential
 3627 species.

3628 **VEGETATION:**

3629 **Physiognomy and structure:** The vegetation is dominated by grasses and sedges, which
 3630 usually have at least 45% cover. There is usually less than 10% cover of shrubs over 0.5 m tall;
 3631 however there may be as much as 50% cover of dwarf-shrubs (under 0.5 m tall) especially
 3632 *Juniperus horizontalis*. This dwarf-shrub is shorter than the dominant grasses, and usually is
 3633 found under the canopy of grasses, so the physiognomic type here is considered a grassland (in
 3634 spite of relatively high cover of dwarf-shrubs). Less than 50% of the ground surface is exposed
 3635 bedrock (including bedrock covered with nonvascular plants: lichens, mosses, algae).

3636

Table 1. Physiognomy of the *Sporobolus heterolepis* - *Schizachyrium scoparium* - (*Carex scirpoidea*) / (*Juniperus horizontalis*) Herbaceous Association; Little Bluestem Alvar Grassland, NVC identifier code C EGL005234.

Physiognomy	Average Cover	Range of Cover
Tree Cover (> 5m)	1.0	0 - 15
Tree Height (m)	0.5	0 - 9
Tall Shrub Cover (2-5 m)	0.5	0 - 3

Table 1. Physiognomy of the *Sporobolus heterolepis* - *Schizachyrium scoparium* - (*Carex scirpoidea*) / (*Juniperus horizontalis*) Herbaceous Association; Little Bluestem Alvar Grassland, NVC identifier code CEG005234.

Physiognomy	Average Cover	Range of Cover
Tall Shrub Height (m)	0.5	0 - 3
Short Shrub Cover (0.5-2 m)	11.0	0 - 33
Short Shrub Height (m)	1.0	0 - 1.8
Vine Cover	0.0	0 - 0
Vine Height	0.0	0 - 0
Herb Cover	46.0	4 - 99
Herb Height	0.3	0-1
Nonvascular Cover	34.0	0 - 90

3637

3638 **Floristics:** Characteristic species of the grassland are *Sporobolus heterolepis*,

3639 *Schizachyrium scoparium*, *Juniperus horizontalis*, *Carex scirpoidea*, *Deschampsia caespitosa*,

3640 *Packera paupercula* (= *Senecio pauperculus*), and *Carex crawei*. *Juniperus horizontalis* may co-

3641 dominate in some stands.

Table 2: Floristic table of the *Sporobolus heterolepis* - *Schizachyrium scoparium* - (*Carex scirpoidea*) / (*Juniperus horizontalis*) Herbaceous Association; Little Bluestem Alvar Grassland, NVC identifier code CEG005234. For species in > 10% of stands for a total of 17 field plots. Species nomenclature is according to Gleason and Cronquist (1991).

Species by Layer	Constancy	Avg. Cover	Range of Cover, Where Present *
SHORT SHRUB LAYER (0.5-2 m)			
<i>Juniperus communis</i>	24	0.1	0.3 - 2
<i>Juniperus horizontalis</i>	71	8.0	1 - 33
<i>Prunus pumila</i>	29	0.5	0.3 - 4
<i>Thuja occidentalis</i>	12	0.1	0.3 - 0.3
HERB LAYER			
<i>Achillea millefolium</i>	12	0.1	0.3 - 0.3
<i>Agropyron trachycaulum</i>	24	0.1	0.3 - 0.3
<i>Ambrosia artemisiifolia</i>	18	0.1	0.3 - 0.3
<i>Antennaria</i> spp.	24	0.1	0.3 - 0.3
<i>Aquilegia canadensis</i>	18	0.1	0.3 - 0.3
<i>Arenaria stricta</i>	29	0.1	0.3 - 1
<i>Aster ciliolatus</i>	12	0.1	0.3 - 0.3
<i>Aster laevis</i>	47	0.5	0.3 - 2
<i>Bromus kalmii</i>	18	0.1	0.3 - 2
<i>Calamagrostis canadensis</i>	12	0.1	1 - 2
<i>Calamintha arkansana</i>	59	1.0	0.3 - 5

Table 2: Floristic table of the *Sporobolus heterolepis* - *Schizachyrium scoparium* - (*Carex scirpoidea*) / (*Juniperus horizontalis*) Herbaceous Association; Little Bluestem Alvar Grassland, NVC identifier code CEGLO05234. For species in > 10% of stands for a total of 17 field plots. Species nomenclature is according to Gleason and Cronquist (1991).

Species by Layer	Constancy	Avg. Cover	Range of Cover, Where Present *
<i>Campanula rotundifolia</i>	65	0.5	0.3 - 1
<i>Carex aurea</i>	12	0.1	0.3 - 0.3
<i>Carex crawei</i>	24	2.0	0.3 - 18
<i>Carex eburnea</i>	24	0.5	0.3 - 4
<i>Carex granularis</i>	12	0.1	0.3 - 1
<i>Carex richardsonii</i>	12	0.1	1 - 3
<i>Carex scirpoidea</i>	71	4.0	0.3 - 23
<i>Carex viridula</i>	41	0.5	0.3 - 2
<i>Castilleja coccinea</i>	29	0.1	0.3 - 1
<i>Cladium mariscoides</i>	12	0.5	1 - 5
<i>Comandra umbellata</i>	53	0.1	0.3 - 1
<i>Danthonia spicata</i>	53	1.0	0.3 - 5
<i>Deschampsia cespitosa</i>	47	1.0	0.3 - 5
<i>Eleocharis compressa</i>	29	0.5	0.3 - 3
<i>Eleocharis elliptica</i>	12	0.5	0.3 - 5
<i>Fragaria virginiana</i>	29	0.1	0.3 - 1
<i>Geum triflorum</i>	18	0.1	0.3 - 0.3
<i>Hedyotis longifolia</i>	18	0.5	0.3 - 5
<i>Hypericum kalmianum</i>	41	0.1	0.3 - 0.3
<i>Hypericum perforatum</i>	29	0.1	0.3 - 0.3
<i>Muhlenbergia glomerata</i>	12	0.1	1 - 2
<i>Panicum</i> spp.	35	1.0	0.3 - 5
<i>Poa compressa</i>	47	5.0	0.3 - 55
<i>Polygala senega</i>	12	0.1	0.3 - 1
<i>Potentilla fruticosa</i>	71	2.0	0.3 - 8
<i>Prunella vulgaris</i>	24	0.1	0.3 - 0.3
<i>Rhamnus alnifolia</i>	12	0.1	0.3 - 2
<i>Rhus aromatica</i>	18	0.2	0.3 - 3
<i>Saxifraga virginensis</i>	12	0.1	0.3 - 0.3
<i>Schizachyrium scoparium</i>	71	8.0	0.3 - 38
<i>Scirpus cespitosus</i>	12	2.0	1 - 25
<i>Senecio pauperculus</i>	88	2.0	0.3 - 23
<i>Sisyrinchium mucronatum</i>	18	0.1	0.3 - 1
<i>Solidago juncea</i>	12	0.1	0.3 - 0.3
<i>Solidago ohioensis</i>	12	1.0	0.3 - 16
<i>Solidago ptarmicoides</i>	76	0.5	0.3 - 3
<i>Solidago</i> spp.	18	0.1	0.3 - 0.3
<i>Sporobolus heterolepis</i>	53	12.0	0.3 - 76
<i>Sporobolus neglectus/vaginiflorus</i>	24	2.0	0.3 - 25

Table 2: Floristic table of the *Sporobolus heterolepis* - *Schizachyrium scoparium* - (*Carex scirpoidea*) / (*Juniperus horizontalis*) Herbaceous Association; Little Bluestem Alvar Grassland, NVC identifier code CEGLO05234. For species in > 10% of stands for a total of 17 field plots. Species nomenclature is according to Gleason and Cronquist (1991).

Species by Layer	Constancy	Avg. Cover	Range of Cover, Where Present *
<i>Zigadenus elegans</i> var. <i>glaucus</i>	29	0.1	0.3 - 2
MOSS LAYER			
<i>Gloeocapsa</i> /rock surface algae	47	12.0	5 - 60
<i>Nostoc commune</i>	41	2.0	0.3 - 18
<i>Trentepohlia</i> spp	29	0.1	0.3 - 0.3
<i>Ditrichum flexicaule</i>	24	0.1	0.3 - 3
<i>Pseudocalliergon turgescens</i>	18	1.0	0.3 - 15
<i>Schistidium rivulare</i>	24	0.5	0.3 - 10
<i>Tortella</i> spp.	41	3.0	0.3 - 29
<i>Tortella tortuosa</i>	12	0.5	0.3 - 10
<i>Cladina rangiferina</i>	18	0.1	0.3 - 0.3
<i>Cladina</i> spp.	12	0.1	0.3 - 0.3
<i>Cladonia pyxidata</i>	29	0.1	0.3 - 1
<i>Cladonia</i> spp.	18	0.1	0.3 - 2
<i>Peltigera</i> spp. (<i>P. rufescens</i> ?)	12	0.1	0.3 - 0.3
<i>Placynthium nigrum</i>	24	0.2	0.3 - 2
<i>Xanthoparmelia</i> spp.	12	0.1	0.3 - 0.3

* Each species may not be present in every plot; the range of values is derived only from plots where the species has been found.

3642

3643

Dynamics: Not documented.

3644

Environment: These grasslands occur on very shallow, patchy soils (usually less than

3645

20 cm deep, averaging about 6 cm deep) on flat limestone and dolostone outcrops (pavements).

3646

Soils are loams high in organic matter. This community often has a characteristic soil moisture

3647

regime of alternating wet and dry periods; they can have wet, saturated soils in spring and fall,

3648

combined with summer drought in most years. In large patches over 20 ha (50 acres) this

3649

grassland often occurs as a small-scale matrix, with smaller patches of other alvar communities

3650

occurring within the larger patch of little bluestem alvar grassland, forming a landscape mosaic

3651

(Reschke et al. 1998).

3652

3653

Table 3. Physical environment of the *Sporobolus heterolepis* - *Schizachyrium scoparium* - (*Carex scirpoidea*) / (*Juniperus horizontalis*) Herbaceous Association; Little Bluestem Alvar Grassland, NVC identifier code CEG005234.

Continuous Variables	Average	Range
Elevation (m)	186.0	178-209
Slope Gradient (degrees)	0.5	0 - 3
Organic Horizon Depth (cm)	1.0	0 - 8
Average Field pH	7.8	7.3 - 9
Soil Depth (cm)	4.0	1 - 9
Exposed Bedrock (%)	18.0	0 - 75
Large Rock, Surficial (% > 10 cm)	7.0	0 - 35
Small Rock, Surficial (% 0.2 - 2 cm)	10.0	0 - 72
Sand, Surficial (%)	0.0	0 - 0
Bare Soil, Surficial (%)	0.5	0 - 5
Litter (%)	2.0	0 - 12
Down Wood (% > 1 cm dbh)	0.1	0 - 1
Water (%)	0.1	0 - 1
Categorical Variables	Category	Number of Plots (%)
Slope Aspect	Flat	7 (41)
Slope Aspect	South	6 (35)
Slope Aspect	Northeast	2 (12)
Slope Aspect	West	1 (6)
Slope Aspect	North	1 (6)
Topographic Position	High, level	5 (28)
Topographic Position	Low, level	4 (24)
Topographic Position	Midslope	2(12)
Topographic Position	Other	4 (24)
Topographic Position	No Value	2 (12)
Soil Moisture	Periodically Inundated	7 (41)
Soil Moisture	Moist	4 (24)
Soil Moisture	Somewhat Moist	3 (17)
Soil Moisture	Dry	1 (6)
Soil Moisture	Extremely Dry	1 (6)
Soil Moisture	No Value	1 (6)

3654 **DISTRIBUTION:**

3655 **Range:** The little bluestem alvar grassland type is found primarily in the upper Great
 3656 Lakes region of the United States and Canada, in northern Michigan, and in Ontario on

3657 Manitoulin Island and vicinity, on the Bruce Peninsula, and at a few sites further east in the
3658 Carden Plain and Burnt Lands.

3659 **Nations:** CA US

3660 **States/Provinces:** Michigan, Ontario

3661 **USFS Ecoregions:** 212H:CC, 212Pc:CCC

3662 **PLOT SAMPLING AND ANALYSIS:**

3663 **Location of archived plot data:** Spreadsheet files with compiled vegetation data from
3664 plots and structural types are available from The Nature Conservancy's Great Lakes Program
3665 Office or from the state or provincial Heritage Programs. Original field forms are filed at
3666 state/provincial Heritage Programs. Plot data access forthcoming (2004) at www.vegbank.org.

3667 **Factors affecting data consistency:** See “Methods,” below.

3668 **The number and size of plots:** Vegetation data were collected using 10 x 10 m relevé
3669 plots placed haphazardly within subjectively defined stands.

3670 **Methods used to analyze field data and identify type:**

3671 From Reschke et al. (1998): Field data collected by collaborators in Michigan, Ontario,
3672 and New York were compiled by the Heritage program staff in each jurisdiction, and provided to
3673 Carol Reschke (inventory and research coordinator for the Alvar Initiative). With assistance
3674 from a contractor (Karen Dietz), field data on vegetation, environment, and evidence of
3675 ecological processes from alvar sites were entered into spreadsheets. Spreadsheets were edited
3676 to combine a few ambiguous taxa (e.g. *Sporobolus neglectus* and *S. vaginiflorus* look similar and
3677 can only be positively distinguished when they are flowering in early fall), incorporate consistent
3678 nomenclature (Kartesz 1994), delete duplicates, and delete species that occurred in only one or a
3679 few samples. Corresponding data on the environment and evidence of ecological processes were
3680 compiled in two additional spreadsheets. The plot data set consisted of data from 85 sample
3681 plots; there were 240 taxa of vascular and nonvascular taxa included in the initial data set.

3682 The plot data set included a great deal of structural detail. If a tree species was present in
3683 different vegetation strata, then it was recorded as a separate taxon for each layer in which it
3684 occurred; for example, *Thuja occidentalis* might be recorded as a tree (over 5 m tall), a tall shrub
3685 (2 to 5 m tall), and a short shrub (05 to 2 m tall). The full data set of 85 samples by 240 taxa was
3686 analyzed using PC-ORD v 3.0 (McCune and Mefford 1995). Vegetation data on percent cover

3687 were relativized for each sample and then transformed with an arcsine - square root
3688 transformation. This standardization is recommended for percentage data (McCune and Mefford
3689 1995).

3690 Two kinds of classification and two kinds of ordination procedures were applied to the
3691 full data set. Classification procedures used were: 1) cluster analysis with group average (or
3692 UPGMA) group linkage method and Sørensen's distance measure, and 2) TWINSpan with the
3693 default settings. The two ordination procedures used were 1) Bray-Curtis ordination with
3694 Sørensen's distance and variance-regression endpoint selection, and 2) non-metric
3695 multidimensional scaling (NMS) using Sørensen's distance and the coordinates from the Bray-
3696 Curtis ordination as a starting configuration.

3697 Environmental data recorded for each plot and data on evidence of ecological processes
3698 were used as overlays in ordination graphs to interpret ordination patterns and relationships
3699 among samples.

3700 The classification dendrograms and ordination graphs were presented to a core group of
3701 ecologists to discuss the results. Participants in the data analysis discussions were: Wasyl
3702 Bakowsky, Don Faber-Langendoen, Judith Jones, Pat Comer, Don Cuddy, Bruce Gilman,
3703 Dennis Albert, and Carol Reschke. The two classifications were compared to see how they
3704 grouped plots, and ordinations were consulted to check and confirm groupings of plots suggested
3705 by the classification program. At the end of the first meeting to discuss the data analysis,
3706 collaborating ecologists agreed on eight alvar community types, and suggested another four or
3707 five that had been observed in field surveys but were not represented in the plot data set. The
3708 group also recommended some refinements to the data analysis.

3709 Following the recommendations of the ecology group, the plot data were modified in two
3710 ways. For nonvascular plants, the first data set included data on individual species or genera, as
3711 well as taxa representing simple growth forms. Since only a few collaborators could identify
3712 nonvascular plants in the field, we had agreed to describe the nonvascular plants in plots by their
3713 growth form and collect a specimen if the species had at least 5% cover in the plot. If
3714 nonvascular species were identified by the surveyor, or from the collected specimen, the species
3715 were included in the data set. This may have biased the results, because the plots sampled by
3716 investigators who knew the nonvascular plants had a greater potential diversity than plots in
3717 which only a few growth forms were identified. Therefore, all data on nonvascular taxa were

3718 lumped into nine growth form categories: foliose algae (e.g. *Nostoc*), rock surface algae,
3719 microbial crusts, turf or cushion mosses, weft mosses, thalloid bryophytes, crustose lichens,
3720 foliose lichens, and fruticose lichens. The second modification involved lumping the different
3721 structural growth forms of woody taxa into a single taxon; for example, trees, tall shrubs and
3722 short shrubs forms of *Thuja occidentalis* were lumped into a single taxon.

3723 These modifications reduced the data set to 85 plots and 199 taxa, and even fewer taxa
3724 with the woody growth forms lumped. The analyses were run again using the procedures
3725 described above with the modified data sets. Lumping the nonvascular plants improved the
3726 classification and ordination results (yielding more clearly defined groups), but lumping the
3727 growth forms of tree species was actually detrimental to the results. The final classification that
3728 we used was produced from an analysis of the data set with nonvascular plants lumped into nine
3729 growth forms, and multiple growth forms of tree species kept separate.

3730 **CONFIDENCE LEVEL:**

3731 **Confidence Rank:** High.

3732 **CITATIONS:**

3733 **Synonymy:**

3734 Dry – Fresh Little Bluestem Open Alvar Meadow Type = (Lee et al. 1998).

3735 **References:**

3736 Gleason, H.A. and A. Cronquist. 1991. Manual of vascular of plants of northeastern United
3737 States and adjacent Canada, 2nd edition. The New York Botanical Garden, Bronx, NY,
3738 USA. 910 p.

3739 Kartesz, J. T. 1994. A synonymized checklist of the vascular flora of the United States, Canada,
3740 and Greenland. Second edition. Volume 1--Checklist. Timber Press, Portland, OR. 622 p.

3741 Lee, H., W. Bakowsky, J. Riley, J. Bowles, M. Puddister, P. Uhlig, and S. McMurray. 1998.
3742 Ecological land classification for southern Ontario: First approximation and its
3743 application. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Southcentral Science Section,
3744 Science Development and Transfer Branch. SCSS Field Guide FG-02.

3745 McCune, B., and M.J. Mefford. 1995. Multivariate analysis of ecological data, PC-ORD
3746 version 3.0. MjM Software, Gleneden Beach, Oregon, USA.

3747 Reschke, C., R. Reid, J. Jones, T. Feeney, and H. Potter, on behalf of the Alvar Working Group.
3748 1998. Conserving Great Lakes Alvars. Final Technical Report of the International Alvar
3749 Conservation Initiative. December 1998. The Nature Conservancy, Great Lakes Program,
3750 Chicago, IL. 119 pp. plus 4 appendices.
3751 **Author of Description:** C. Reschke
3752

3753 **APPENDIX 4**

3754 Field Plot Data Exchange Schema.

3755 *Introduction*

3756 Most of the associations and alliances in North America have not yet been described
3757 numerically and little is formally known about their ecological characteristics, either in general
3758 or individually. A major reason for the lack of knowledge about associations and alliances is
3759 that field plot data for them has not generally been available. To date, the only information
3760 compiled systematically about alliances in the United States is the set of alliance descriptions
3761 developed by NatureServe (2002, 2003). Although this is the best available information, few
3762 descriptions are linked with field plot data and fewer are linked with field plot data that can be
3763 accessed and reexamined. To describe associations and alliances and to investigate their
3764 ecological characteristics, either a massive amount of new field plots must be collected or
3765 existing data must somehow be used.

3766 The only way that enough field data can be developed to for this purpose is to combine
3767 data from multiple sources. To facilitate this, VegBank (www.vegbank.org) has been
3768 established to archive, integrate, and disseminate the field plot data that will be needed to
3769 achieve the NVC goal of quantitative field based and peer reviewed descriptions of associations
3770 and alliances.

3771 At the heart of this endeavor is the technical capability to read and integrate digital files
3772 containing field plot data. The most appropriate technology for this is XML, and the operable
3773 tool for this purpose is a XML schema (see Sperberg-McQueen and Thompson, 2003). The
3774 NVC XML Schema defines the structure, content, and semantics of plot data that have been
3775 originally generated by many different workers. Legacy data formatted to this schema can be
3776 queried and combined. The NVC XML Schema is the fundamental means of formatting and
3777 transferring vegetation field plot data.

3778 The NVC XML Schema Version 1.0 contains approximately 6,700 lines of code. It can
3779 be accessed online at:

3780 [<http://vegbank.org/vegdocs/xml/vegbank-xml-index.html>].

3781

3782 **TABLES**

3783

3784 Table 1 A crosswalk of strata categories with common growth form categories.

3785 Table 2. A process for estimating canopy cover of a single stratum from stratum cover values
3786 of species or growth forms.

3787 Table 3. Recommended growth forms to be used when describing vegetation structure.

3788 Table 4. Comparison of commonly used cover-abundance scales in the United States.

3789 Table 5. Summary of layer data from field plots for a given type.

3790 Table 6. A stand table of floristic composition for each layer.

3791 Table 7. Constancy classes.

3792

Table 1. A crosswalk of strata categories (left column) with common growth form categories (all other columns).

Stratum	Growth Form								
	Trees				Shrubs		Herbs		Cryptogams
	Seedling	Sapling	Pole	Mature	Tall	Medium	Low Shrub	Herb	
Tree			x	x	(x)				
Shrub		x			x	x			
Field	x						x	x	
Moss									x
Floating								x	
Submerged								x	

3793

3794

Table 2. A process for estimating canopy cover of a single stratum from the cover values of individual species occurring in that strata. The same calculation may be applied to canopy cover values of growth forms (i.e., sapling, tall shrub, etc.) recorded from a given stratum. In this example the canopy cover of the shrub stratum is estimated to be 64%.

Species (<i>j</i>) occurring in the shrub strata (<i>i</i>)	Actual cover in %	Step 1: $\left(1 - \frac{\% \text{ cov } j}{100}\right)$	Step 2 $1 - \prod_{j=1}^n (\text{Step1})$	Step 3 <i>Step2</i> * 100
<i>Acer glabrum</i>	15	0.85	1 - 0.357 = 0.643	0.643 * 100 = 64.3
<i>Spiraea douglasii</i>	40	0.6		
<i>Vaccinium scoparium</i>	30	0.7		
Π (i.e., the product of a * b * c)		0.357		

3795 Table 3. Recommended growth forms to be used when describing vegetation structure (see also
3796 Whittaker 1975:359, and Table 1.2 of Appendix 1). Not to be confused with vegetation strata.

Tree	<p>Trees (larger woody plants, mostly well above 5 m tall)</p> <p>Needle-leaved tree (mainly conifers – pine, spruce, larch, redwood, etc.)</p> <p>Broad-leaved deciduous tree (leaves shed in the temperate zone winter, or in the tropical dry season)</p> <p>Broad-leaved evergreen tree (many tropical and subtropical trees, mostly with medium-sized leaves)</p> <p>Thorn tree (armed with spines, in many cases with compound, deciduous leaves, often reduced in size)</p> <p>Evergreen sclerophyllous tree (with smaller, tough, evergreen leaves)</p> <p>Succulent tree (primarily cacti and succulent euphorbs)</p> <p>Palm tree (rosette trees, unbranched with a crown of large leaves)</p> <p>Tree fern (rosette trees, unbranched with a crown of large leaves)</p> <p>Bamboo (arborescent grasses with woody-like stems)</p> <p>Other tree</p>
Shrub	<p>Shrubs (smaller woody plants, mostly below 5 m tall)</p> <p>Needle-leaved shrub (mainly conifers – juniper, yew, etc.)</p> <p>Broad-leaved deciduous shrub (leaves shed in the temperate zone winter, or in the tropical dry season)</p> <p>Broad-leaved evergreen shrub (many tropical and temperate shrubs, mostly with medium to small-sized leaves)</p> <p>Thorn shrub (armed with spines, in many cases with compound, deciduous leaves, often reduced in size)</p> <p>Evergreen sclerophyllous shrub (with smaller, tough, evergreen leaves)</p> <p>Palm shrub (rosette shrubs, unbranched with a short crown of leaves)</p> <p>Dwarf-shrub (low shrubs spreading near the ground surface, less than 50 cm high)</p> <p>Semi-shrub (suffrutescent, i.e., with the upper parts of the stems and branches dying back in unfavorable seasons)</p> <p>Succulent shrub (cacti, certain euphorbias, etc.)</p> <p>Other shrub</p>
Herbaceous	<p>Herbs (plants without perennial aboveground woody stems)</p> <p>Forb (herbs other than ferns and graminoids)</p> <p>Graminoid (grasses, sedges, and other grass like plants)</p> <p>Fern (pteridophytes – ferns, clubmosses, horsetails, etc.)</p> <p>Succulent forb</p> <p>Aquatic herb (floating & submergent)</p> <p>Other herbaceous</p>
Nonvascular	<p>Moss</p> <p>Liverwort/hornwort</p> <p>Lichen</p> <p>Alga</p>

Other	Epiphyte (plants growing wholly above the ground surface on other plants) Vine/liana (woody climbers or vines) Other/unknown (null) – Not assessed Aquatic floating Aquatic submerged
-------	--

3797

3798

3799 Table 4. Comparison of commonly used cover-abundance scales in the United States. Agencies
 3800 and authors are abbreviated as: BB=Braun-Blanquet (1928); NC=North Carolina Vegetation
 3801 Survey (Peet et al. 1998); K=Domin sensu Krajina (1933); DAUB=Daubenmire (1959); FS
 3802 (Db)=Forest Service, modified Daubenmire (1959) scale; PA=Pfister and Arno (1980);
 3803 NZ=New Zealand LandCare (Allen 1992, Hall 1992); BDS=Barkman et al. (1964); D=Domin
 3804 (1928); FS (eco) = Hann et al. (1988), Keane et al. (1990) for the U.S. Forest Service
 3805 ECODATA software). Break points shown in the Cover-abundance column reflect the major
 3806 break points of the Braun-Blanquet scale, which is considered the minimum standard for cover
 3807 classes. Among the available cover class systems, the NC and K cover class systems can be
 3808 unambiguously collapsed to the B-B standard, and the DAUB, FS, PA and NZ scales are for all
 3809 practical purposes collapsible into the B-B scale without damage to data integrity. The D, BDS,
 3810 WHTF are somewhat discordant with the B-B standard and should be avoided except when
 3811 required for incorporation of legacy data.

Cover-abundance	BB	NC	K	DAUB	FS(Db)	PA	NZ	BDS	D	FS(eco)
Present but not in plot () [†]						+				
Single individual	r	1	+	1	T	T	1	-	+	1
Sporadic or few	+	1	1	1	T	T	1	-	1	1
0 - 1%	1 [‡]	2	2	1	T	T	1	-	2	1
1 - 2%	1	3	3	1	1	1	2	-	3	3
2 - 3%	1	4	3	1	1	1	2	0	3	3
3 - 5%	1	4	3	1	1	1	2	0	4	3
5 - 6.25%	2	5	4	2	2	2	3	1	4	10
6.25 - 10%	2	5	4	2	2	2	3	1	4	10
10 - 12.5%	2	6	5	2	2	2	3	1	5	10
12.5 - 15%	2	6	5	2	2	2	3	1	5	10
15 - 25%	2	6	5	2	2	2	3	2	5	20
25 - 30%	3	7	6	3	3	3	4	3	6	30
30 - 33%	3	7	6	3	3	3	4	3	6	30
33 - 35%	3	7	7	3	3	3	4	3	7	30
35 - 45%	3	7	7	3	3	3	4	4	7	40
45 - 50%	3	7	7	3	3	3	4	5	7	50
50 - 55%	4	8	8	4	4	4	5	5	8	50
55 - 65%	4	8	8	4	4	4	5	6	8	60
65 - 75%	4	8	8	4	4	4	5	7	8	70
75 - 85%	5	9	9	5	5	5	6	8	9	80
85 - 90%	5	9	9	5	5	5	6	9	9	90
90 - 95%	5	9	9	5	5	5	6	9	10	90
95 - 100%	5	10	10	6	6	6	6	10	10	98

[†] Species present in the stand but not in the plot are usually added in parentheses to the species list.

[‡] This is a cover/abundance scale; if numerous individuals of a taxon collectively contribute less than 5% cover, then the taxon can be assigned a value of 1 or, if very sparse, a “+.”

3812

3813

3814 Table 5. Summary of vegetation layer, or strata, data from field plots for a given type.

Layer	Height Class	Average % Cover	Minimum % Cover	Maximum % Cover
Tree				
Shrub				
Herb				
Moss				
Floating Aquatic				
Submerged Aquatic				

3815

3816

3817 Table 6. A stand table of floristic composition for each stratum. Strata are defined on page 41.

Species Name	Stratum	1, Dominant 2, Characteristic 3. Constant	Constancy	Av. % Cover	Min. % Cover	Max. % Cover
Species 1						
Species 2						
Species 3						
Species <i>n</i>						

3818

3819

3820 Table 7. Constancy classes.

3821

Constancy Classes	Relative (%) Constancy
I	1-20
II	>20-40
III	>40-60
IV	>60-80
V	>80-100

3825 **FIGURES**

3826

3827 Figure 1. Categories and examples of the National Vegetation Classification, showing the
3828 levels from class to association.

3829 Figure 2. An illustration of strata showing growth forms of individual plants.

3830 Figure 3. Schematic diagram of the peer review process.

3831 Figure 4. Flow of information through the process for formal recognition of an association or
3832 alliance.

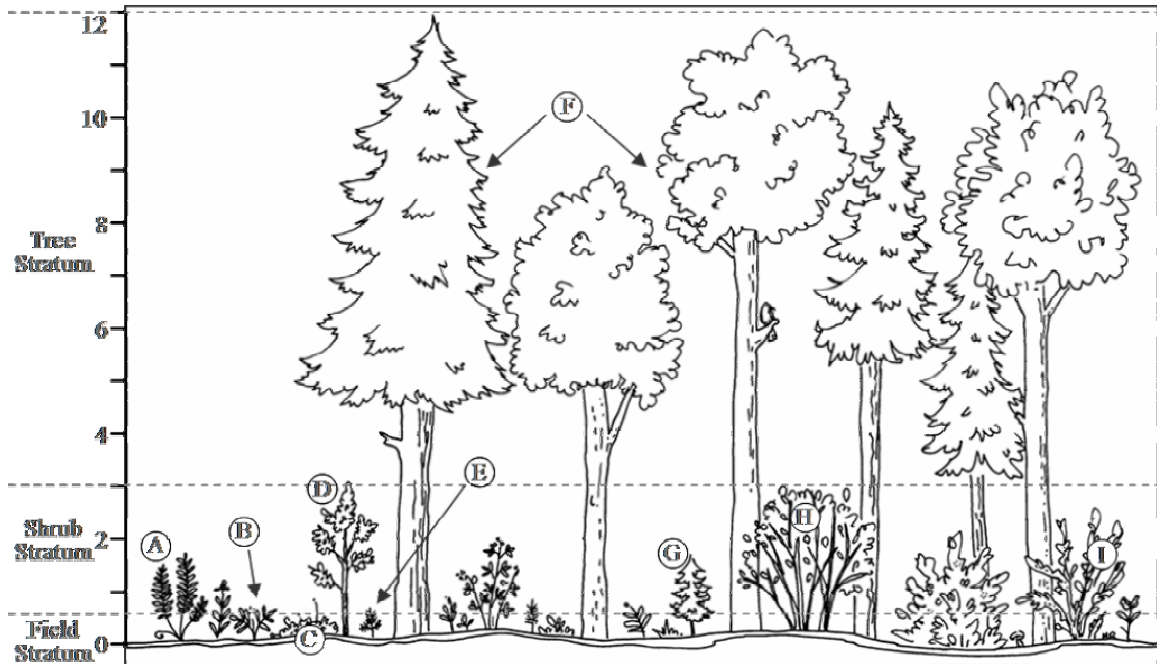
3833

3834 Figure 1. Categories and examples of the National Vegetation Classification, showing the levels
3835 from Class to Association. The FGDC (1997) standard also includes two higher levels above
3836 Class: Division and Order.

3837
3838
3839
3840
3841
3842
3843
3844
3845
3846
3847
3848
3849
3850
3851
3852
3853

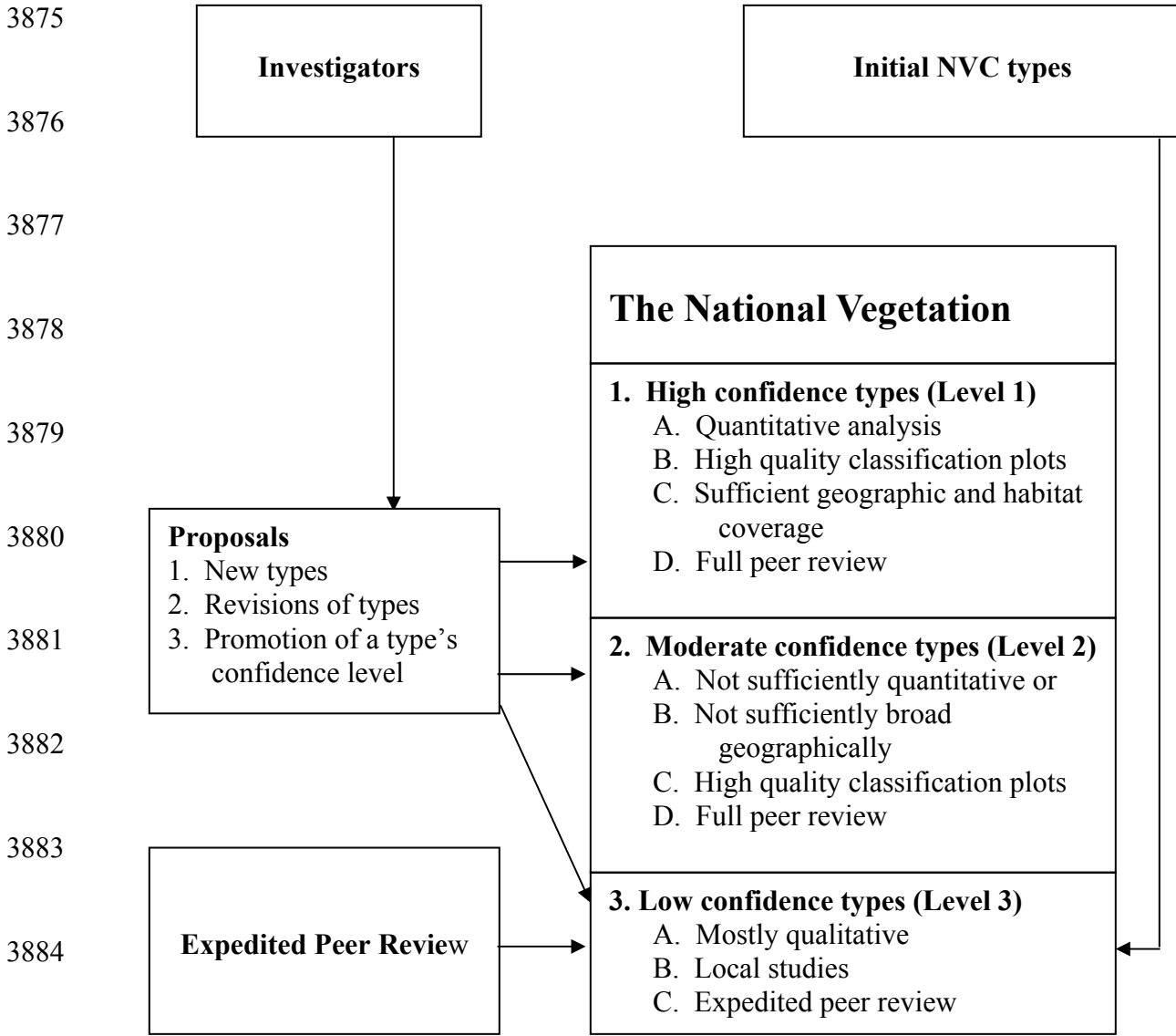
<u>Physiognomic Categories</u>	
<u>Category</u> . . .	<u>Example</u>
Class . . .	Open Tree Canopy
Subclass . . .	Evergreen Open Tree Canopy
Group	Temperate or Subpolar Needle-leaved Evergreen Open Tree Canopy
Subgroup . . .	Natural/Seminatural
Formation	Rounded-crowned temperate or subpolar needle-leaved evergreen open tree canopy.
<u>Floristic Categories</u>	
Alliance . . .	<i>Juniperus occidentalis</i> Woodland Alliance
Association	<i>Juniperus occidentalis</i> / <i>Artemesia tridentata</i> Association

3854 Figure 2. An illustration of strata showing growth forms of individual plants as may be
3855 found in a plot (the ground stratum is not delineated). Height is shown in meters. The field
3856 stratum is between 0 and 0.5 m; the shrub stratum is from 0.5 to 3.5 m; and the tree
3857 stratum is from 3.5 to 12 m. Assignment of individual plants to a stratum is based on height and growth
3858 form as follows: A. A plant having an herbaceous growth form. Although projecting vertically
3859 into the shrub stratum it is excluded from being recorded as part of the shrub stratum canopy
3860 cover since its stems die and regrow each year. B. A plant having a dwarf shrub growth form is
3861 recorded as part of the field stratum. If desired, a separate dwarf-shrub substratum can be
3862 recognized. C. A moss; recorded as part of the ground stratum. D. A plant having a tree growth
3863 form but at a sapling stage of life. This individual is recorded as part of the shrub stratum
3864 canopy. E. A plant having a tree growth form but at a seedling stage of life. This plant is
3865 recorded as part of the field stratum canopy. F. Mature trees, recorded as part of the tree stratum.
3866 G. A sapling, as in D. H. A plant having a shrub growth form; recorded as part of the shrub
3867 stratum canopy cover. I. A plant having an herb growth form and projecting into the shrub
3868 stratum; excluded from being recorded as part of the shrub stratum canopy (as in A).
3869

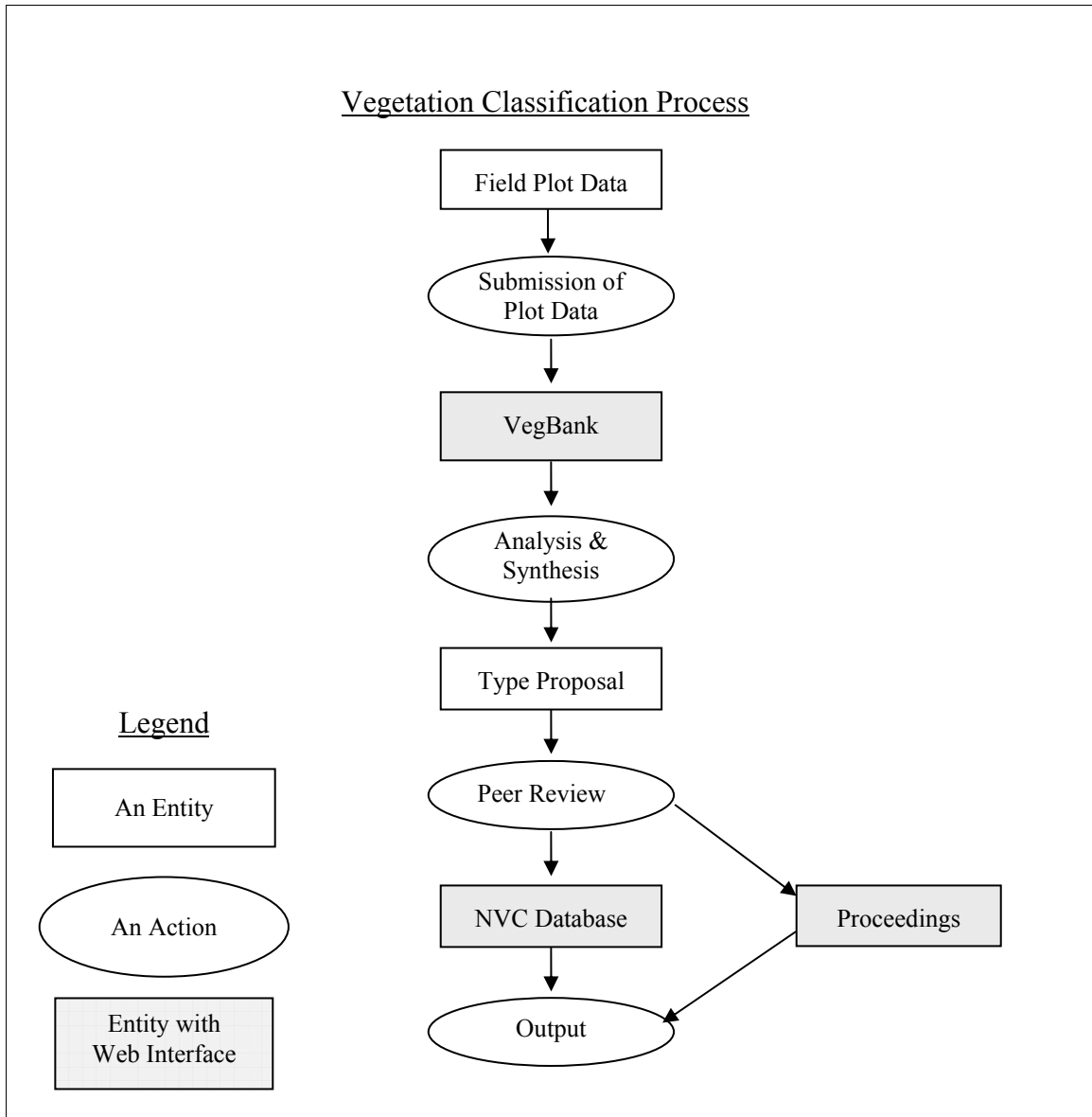


3870
3871
3872
3873

3874 Figure 3. Schematic diagram of the peer-review process.



3889 Figure 4. Flow of information through the process for formal recognition of an association or
3890 alliance. Beginning at the top, field plot data are collected, plot data are submitted to the plots
3891 database (VegBank), data are analyzed, and a proposal describing a type is submitted for review.
3892 If accepted by reviewers, the type description is classified under the NVC, the monograph is
3893 published, and the description made available.



3894

3895

3896 **TEXT BOXES**

3897 Text Box 1. Guiding principles of the FGDC National Vegetation Classification Standard
3898 (FGDC 1997).

3899 Text Box 2. Required topical sections for monographic description of alliances and associations.

3900 Text Box 3. Examples of Association and Alliance names.

Text Box 1. Guiding principles of the FGDC Vegetation Classification Standard (FGDC 1997).

- The classification is applicable over extensive areas.
- The vegetation classification standard compatible, wherever possible, with other Earth cover/land cover classification standards.
- The classification will avoid developing conflicting concepts and methods through cooperative development with the widest possible range of individuals and institutions.
- Application of the classification must be repeatable and consistent.
- When possible, the classification standard will use common terminology (i.e., terms should be understandable, and jargon should be avoided).
- For classification and mapping purposes, the classification categories were designed to be mutually exclusive and additive to 100% of an area when mapped within any of the classification's hierarchical levels (Division, Order, Class, Subclass, Subgroup, Formation, Alliance, or Association). Guidelines have been developed for those instances where placement of a floristic unit into a single physiognomic classification category is not clear. Additional guidelines will be developed as other such instances occur.
- The classification standard will be dynamic, allowing for refinement as additional information becomes available.
- The NVCS is of existing, not potential, vegetation and is based upon vegetation condition at the optimal time during the growing season. The vegetation types are defined on the basis of inherent attributes and characteristics of the vegetation structure, growth form, and cover.
- The NVCS is hierarchical (i.e., aggregatable) to contain a small number of generalized categories at the higher level and an increasingly large number of more detailed categories at the lower levels. The categories are intended to be useful at a range of scales (UNEP/FAO 1995, Di Gregorio and Jansen 1996).
- The upper levels of the NVCS are based primarily on the physiognomy (life form, cover, structure, leaf type) of the vegetation (not individual species). The life forms (e.g., herb, shrub, or tree) in the dominant or uppermost stratum will predominate in the classification of the vegetation type. Climate and other environmental variables are used to help organize the standard, but physiognomy is the driving factor.
- The lower levels of the NVCS are based on actual floristic (vegetation) composition. The data used to describe Alliance and Association types must be collected in the field using standard and documented sampling methods. The Alliance and Association units are derived from these field data. These floristically-based classes will be nested under the physiognomic classes of the hierarchy.

Text Box 2. Required topical sections for monographic description of alliances and associations.

OVERVIEW

1. Proposed names of the type (Latin, translated, common).
2. Floristic unit (alliance or association).
3. Placement in hierarchy.
4. A brief description of the overall type concept.
5. Classification comments.
6. Rationale for nominal species.

VEGETATION

7. Physiognomy and structure.
8. Floristics.
9. Dynamics.

ENVIRONMENT

10. Environment description.

DISTRIBUTION

11. A description of the range/distribution.
12. A list of U.S. states and Canadian provinces where the type occurs or may occur.
13. A list of any nations outside the U.S. and Canada where the type occurs or may occur.

PLOT SAMPLING AND ANALYSIS

14. Plots used to define the type.
15. Location of archived plot data.
16. actors affecting data consistency.
17. The number and size of plots.
18. Methods used to analyze field data and identify the type.
 - a. Details of the methods used to analyze field data.
 - b. Criteria for defining the type.

CONFIDENCE LEVEL

19. Overall confidence level for the type (see Section 7).

CITATIONS

20. Synonymy
21. Full citations for any sources
22. Author of Description

DISCUSSION

23. Possible sub-association or -alliance types or variants, if appropriate, should be discussed here along with other narrative information.

Text Box 3. Examples of association and alliance names.

Examples of association names:

Schizachyrium scoparium - (*Aristida* spp.) Herbaceous Vegetation

Abies lasiocarpa / *Vaccinium scoparium* Forest

Metopium toxiferum - *Eugenia foetida* - *Krugiodendron ferreum* - *Swietenia mahagoni* /
Capparis flexuosa Forest

Rhododendron carolinianum Shrubland

Quercus macrocarpa - (*Quercus alba* - *Quercus velutina*) / *Andropogon gerardii*
Wooded Herbaceous Vegetation

Examples of alliance names:

Pseudotsuga menziesii Forest Alliance

Fagus grandifolia - *Magnolia grandiflora* Forest Alliance

Pinus virginiana - *Quercus (coccinea, prinus)* Forest Alliance

Juniperus virginiana - (*Fraxinus americana*, *Ostrya virginiana*) Woodland Alliance

Pinus palustris / *Quercus* spp. Woodland Alliance

Artemisia tridentata ssp. *wyomingensis* Shrubland Alliance

Andropogon gerardii - (*Calamagrostis canadensis*, *Panicum virgatum*) Herbaceous
Alliance